

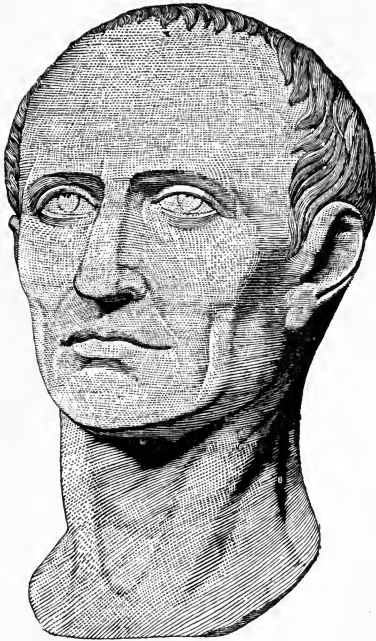




Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2007 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation







CAIUS IULIUS CAESAR.  
(British Museum.)

*(Frontispiece.)*



THE WORD-VALUE  
FIRST LATIN BOOK

BY

E. CUTLER SHEDD, A.M.

*REVISED EDITION*

NEW YORK  
WILLIAM BEVERLEY HARISON

1907

1760  
3541  
W

## SOME SUGGESTIONS.

IN examining this book please keep in mind the following facts: The repetition of words is so constant that the great majority of the words in any given lesson are familiar to the pupils when they reach it.

They therefore are quite free to center attention upon the endings and syntax.

About three fourths of each advance reading lesson is really a review of words, forms, and constructions already studied.

Hence it is possible to master the reading lessons in spite of their increasing length and sometimes complex sentence structure.

### A ONE YEAR'S COURSE.

The pupils should be of the usual age of High-School Freshmen. A nine months' course, with five recitations a week, contains about 170 recitations, aside from periods for examinations.

As a rule, devote two recitations to each of the seventy-eight lessons, abridging the prose composition work where necessary. Half, or less, of the prose work has given excellent results when carefully done. (156 recitations.)

The first recitation may be devoted to the forms or rules and to the reading; the second to completing the reading, and to prose composition work, with ten minutes, if desired, for composition at sight.

Devote about ten more recitations to the further study of the paradigms. Devote the remaining recitations to Lessons LXVII and LXXIV.

If more time be needed, omit Lessons XLII, XLVII, and LX (releasing six recitations), and Lesson LXXIV (releasing four or five more recitations). Or else devote a few weeks at the beginning of the second year to the last few lessons and the final reading exercises. This will put the class into excellent trim for immediately taking up Cæsar or Nepos.

**"COMPOSITION AT SIGET."**—This is the title of a pamphlet discussing the subject and giving a list of sentences adapted for use. It will be sent free of charge on request to teachers using this book.

**"SIX BOOKS OF CÆSAR IN ONE YEAR."**—In a pamphlet of this title the author has described the method which is embodied in this book, and also the result of a two years' test. In this test the class numbered fifteen. Each member completed the six books with comparative ease and without lack of thoroughness. Those pupils to whom Latin proved difficult seemed to derive the greater benefit—indeed, judging by previous experience, several would have failed to pass in even the five books required of previous classes had it not been for the thorough drill in reading given by the WORD-VALUE TEXT-BOOK.

## PREFACE.

IF we ask second-year pupils what they find to be the great obstacle to the easy reading of Latin, their usual reply is: "We do not know the meanings of the words." This reply indirectly attests the success of recent text-book makers in their efforts to improve the method of presenting syntax; but it is also a call to confront the problem how best to aid learners to acquire a vocabulary.

The Latin words which the pupil will meet most often plainly are of greatest value to him. For example, *dico* and *res* are very important. He will not meet with *regno* or *nauta* ten times a year if he reads the writers usually selected, unless he takes the first book of Livy. He will encounter *cachinno* or *anser* once or twice, if at all. This book uses only important Latin words, so far as feasible.

The best way to memorize the meanings of a large number of words is to encounter them frequently in reading lessons and written work, for most words are arbitrary symbols, with nothing to suggest a connection with the objects they denote. If repetitions are frequent enough, the process of memorizing proceeds without apparent effort. Almost any pupil, when he completes his first year in Latin, recalls the meanings of such words as *bonus* and *est*. They have been brought to his attention again and again during months of study.

This book contains four long word-lists, printed on tinted paper for ready reference. The words in these lists are repeated about five times in the reading lessons in which they first occur, where they are printed in heavy type and also collected in a short word-list. The long lists take the place of an English-Latin vocabulary, for the Latin words required in any given composition exercise will be found in the preceding word-lists, in the Latin reading exercise for the same lesson, or by the help of a foot-note.

The reading contains in all about eleven thousand words, and the written exercises about six thousand. Thus the words found in the special lists each occur from sixty to seventy times in the book. Naturally some occur more frequently than others, but scarcely more than six less than thirty or forty times. There are also lists of English words derived from the Latin, "Allied Words," which aid the memory when aid is most needed. The Latin words are thus so impressed upon the memory by repetition and the association of ideas that the pupil can scarcely choose but learn them. It is believed that this method has never before been applied so thoroughly and systematically.<sup>1</sup>

The saving of time thus secured permits the introduction of reading lessons of some length, and of sentences with a complex word order. The value of the latter as a preparation for classical Latin is obvious.

The isolated sentences are taken as far as possible from the text of Cæsar. Wherever practicable they give way to narratives from his writings, with text simplified, taken chiefly from the "Civil Wars," in order to impart variety and correct any tendency to depend upon memory alone in second-year reading. Those passages have been chosen

---

<sup>1</sup> To what extent this method affects the reading of second-year Latin may be seen from the following extract from Cæsar (B. G. II. 17), where the words in heavy type are among the words memorized in this First Latin Book :

**His rēbus cōgnītis, explorātōrēs centuriōnēsque prae-mittit, qui locum idōneum castris dēligant. Cum ex dēditiciis Belgis reliquisque Gallis complūrēs Caesarem secūti unā iter facerent, quidam ex his, ut postea ex captivis cōgnitum est, eōrum diērum cōsuetudine itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nervios pervēnērunt atque hīs dēmōstrārunt, inter singulās legiōnēs impedimentōrum māgnum numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōtīi, cum prima legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs māgnum spatium ab-essent, hanc sub sarcinis adoriri; quā pulsā impedimentisque dīreptis futurum, ut reliquae contrā cōsistere nōn audērent.**

which seemed most full of interest as narratives. The text has been simplified only to the extent that the pupils' knowledge of vocabulary and construction demand in each reading lesson. The learner is thus gradually introduced to the Latin of Cæsar himself. Incidentally he is familiarized with Roman methods of warfare and history, in which he is aided by brief notes and carefully selected illustrations and maps.

In the treatment of rules and paradigms the following are the points chiefly considered :

(1) Terms and expressions unfamiliar to the pupil have been either eliminated or carefully explained when first introduced. Wherever possible English grammar has been used as a stepping-stone. The attempt has been made to approach difficult subjects, such as the subjunctive, from the standpoint of the learner.

(2) Rules and forms not needed for the reading of "The Gallic War" have either been excluded, or else but little emphasized. Hence the locative case, for instance, has been omitted, and the vocative made optional.

(3) All rules introduced are given in full. For example, all forms of indirect discourse are fully treated.

(4) Common constructions which are difficult are emphasized, and a constant drill in them is maintained throughout the reading and written exercises. Particular attention is called, in this connection, to the treatment of the sequence of tenses and of clauses of purpose and result in the subjunctive, and of indirect discourse.

(5) Constructions, like those of the gerundive, which pupils are likely to confuse, are introduced at widely separated intervals.

(6) The constructions which are most common are introduced first ; for example, the ablative of means and *qui* before *quis*.

(7) Similar forms are introduced in close sequence. All forms of the genitive in *ius* are thus united.

(8) The work has been graded with much care. The introductory lessons are an example of this. In the latter part of the book frequent reading lessons are inserted to aid the pupil in assimilating what has been already learned, before taking up new points.

(9) The subject of verb analysis is given considerable attention in the belief that it greatly simplifies the mastering of the verb.

(10) The grouping of the words in the Latin Reading Lessons (believed to be a new feature in language teaching) has been suggested as a valuable aid in acquiring the habit of rapid reading.

Many cross references are given, to aid in uniting what logically belong together. The rules are reprinted at the rear of the book in a list, arranged systematically and with references to leading grammars, inserted for convenience and to facilitate the transition to second-year work.

For the sake of uniformity and simplicity great care has been taken that each style of type be used for a like purpose throughout the book. Latin words and phrases, for instance, appear in a uniform type and are thus immediately distinguishable from the English.

We are indebted to Mrs. M. J. Woodhull, of New York City, for the careful editing of the book, and also for her many valuable suggestions.

Thanks are also due to Mr. George M. Baker, recently instructor in the Lawrenceville Preparatory School, for the care he has exercised in marking the quantities, and to Professor Clifford P. Clark, of Fairmont College, for various useful suggestions. The author's greatest obligation, however, is to his pupils, (without whose cooperation little could have been accomplished,) especially to those of them to whom the study of Latin has frequently seemed dull and unprofitable.

E. CUTLER SHEDD.

# CONTENTS.

---

CAIUS IULIUS CAESAR.....	<i>Frontispiece</i>
	PAGE
Map I. THE ROMAN DOMINIONS, 44 B.C.....	85
Map II. SOUTHEASTERN GAUL.....	86
Map III. THE SCENE OF CAESAR'S CAMPAIGN AGAINST POMPEY.	87
Map IV. THE ROMAN PROVINCE OF AFRICA.....	204
Map V. THE REGION AROUND UTICA, 44 B.C.....	205
GRAMMATICAL INTRODUCTION.....	I

## LESSON

I. Singular and Plural Nominative of First Declension.....	7
II. Accusative Case. Direct Object.....	9
III. First Declension. Indirect Object.....	11
IV. Order of Words. Apposition. Predicate Nouns .....	14
In with Ablative.	
V. Dative of the Possessor.....	18
VI. In with Accusative. Omission of Subject.....	20
First Word-list.	
VII. Second Declension. Vocative Case.....	23
VIII. Adjectives of First and Second Declensions. Predicate	
Adjectives.....	26
IX. Second Declension. Nouns in <b>-er</b> .....	29
X. The Verb <b>Sum</b> . Agreement of Verb with Subject .....	32
XI. <b>Sum</b> , <i>continued</i> . Ablative of Means or Instrument.....	34
XII. First Conjugation. Personal Endings.....	37
XIII. First Conjugation, <i>continued</i> . Verb Stems.....	41
XIV. Ablative of Manner. Endings.....	44
XV. <b>Hic</b> and <b>Ille</b> .....	46

LESSON	PAGE
XVI. <b>Is</b> .....	49
XVII. <b>Qui</b> . Agreement of Relative Pronouns.....	52
XVIII. <b>Quis ?</b> .....	55
XIX. Reading.....	58
XX. <b>Iste, Idem, Ipse</b> .....	60
XXI. <b>Quidam. Aliquis</b> . Irregular Adjectives.....	63
Word-list for Review .....	66
XXII. Third Declension. Mute Stems. "Allied Words" begin .....	67
XXIII. Third Declension. Mute Stems, <i>continued</i> . Ablative of Cause.....	70
XXIV. Third Declension. Liquid Stems.....	73
XXV. Third Declension. Stems in <b>i</b> . Descriptive, Ablative, or Genitive .....	76
XXVI. Third Declension. Stems in <b>i</b> , <i>continued</i> . Comple- mentary Infinitive.....	79
XXVII. Third Declension. Adjectives. Principal and Subor- dinate Clauses. Order of Words.....	82
XXVIII. Third Declension. Adjectives, <i>continued</i> . Hints for Reading.....	88
XXIX. Ablative of Time.....	93
XXX. Second Conjugation.....	95
XXXI. Second Conjugation, <i>continued</i> . Tense Signs.....	98
XXXII. Ablative of Specification.....	101
XXXIII. Fourth Declension.....	103
Word-list for Review.....	105
XXXIV. Third Conjugation.....	106
XXXV. Third Conjugation, <i>continued</i> .....	108
XXXVI. Reading .....	111
XXXVII. Comparing of Adjectives, Ablative with Comparatives..	113
XXXVIII. Comparing of Adjectives, <i>continued</i> .....	116
XXXIX. Comparing of Adjectives, <i>continued</i> .....	119
XL. Formation of Adverbs.....	122
XLI. Comparing of Adverbs.....	125
XLII. Reading .....	127
XLIII. Third Conjugation Verbs in <b>id</b> . Accusative of Space and Time.....	129
XLIV. Fifth Declension.....	132
XLV. Subjunctive of Purpose .....	134



LESSON	PAGE
XLVI. Personal and Reflexive Pronouns. Possessive Adjectives.....	138
Word-list for Review.....	141
XLVII. Reading.....	143
XLVIII. Numerals.....	145
XLIX. Numerals, <i>continued</i> .....	148
L. Subjunctive of Result.....	149
LI. The Verb <b>Possum</b> .....	151
LII. Reading.....	154
LIII. Fourth Conjugation.....	156
LIV. Review of the Four Conjugations.....	158
LV. The Infinitive. Indirect Statements.....	159
LVI. The Tenses of the Infinitive in Indirect Statements.....	163
LVII. Reading.....	165
LVIII. Subjunctive after Verbs of Fearing.....	166
LIX. Participles. Accusative of Place Whither, Names of Towns.....	169
LX. Reading.....	173
LXI. Deponent Verbs. Ablative with some Deponents.....	174
LXII. Dative with some Intransitives.....	176
LXIII. The Irregular Verbs <b>Volō, Nōlō, Mālō</b> .....	178
LXIV. <b>Cum</b> . Temporal.....	179
LXV. Reading for Review.....	181
LXVI. Gerundive and Gerund.....	183
LXVII. Reading.....	185
LXVIII. Dative of End or Service. Dative with Compounds... ..	188
LXIX. Ablative Absolute.....	190
LXX. Primary and Secondary Tenses. Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive. Full Rule for Sequence of Tenses.....	193
LXXI. The Irregular Verb <b>Eō</b> . Ablative of Separation.....	196
LXXII. Subjunctive and Relative Clauses.....	198
LXXIII. The Irregular Verbs <b>Ferō</b> and <b>Fīō</b> . Hints for Reading.....	201
Word-list for Review.....	202
LXXIV. Reading.....	206
LXXV. Indirect Questions. <b>Quam</b> with Superlative.....	210
LXXVI. Conditional Sentences.....	212
LXXVII. Commands and Appeals. The Three Forms of Indirect Discourse.....	215

LESSON	PAGE
LXXVIII. The Periphrastic Conjugations.....	218
Reading Lessons.....	221
Tables of Declension and Conjugation.....	228
General Vocabulary.....	259
Vocabulary of Proper Names.....	279
List of Rules, Arranged Systematically.....	285
Index.....	291



References throughout are to paragraphs.

There is no English-Latin vocabulary. The majority of the words used in the prose composition work present no difficulty, because the pupil is already familiar with them. Every word, except proper names, may be found either in previous word-lists, in the Latin reading exercise for the same lesson, or by the help of a foot-note. Compare 48 and 72.

The vocabulary of proper names follows the main vocabulary.

Directions for the use of the "Allied Words" are given in paragraph 131.

For the purpose of ready reference, the rules will be found arranged systematically and with references to leading Latin grammars in a list following the vocabulary at the end of the book.

For the list of abbreviations see page 258.

References throughout are to paragraphs.

## GRAMMATICAL INTRODUCTION.

**1. ALPHABET.** The **Latin alphabet** is the same as the English, except that it has neither **j** nor **w**. **I** serves both as a **vowel** and as a **consonant**.

*a.* In late Latin and English **j** has taken the place of **i**-consonant.

**2. V.** The sounds denoted by the letters called **vowels** are produced by vibrating the vocal cords. The sounds denoted by the **mute consonants** are most easily produced when a vowel sound is checked by means of the throat, tongue, or lips. A **semi-vowel** partakes of the character of both a consonant and a vowel, but usually appears in combination with the latter.

*2.* The vowels are **a, e, i, o, u,** and **y**.

**3. CLASSIFICATION OF CONSONANTS.**

**1. Mutes.** **b, p, c, g, k, q, d, t.**

**b, p,** lip sounds, called **labial mutes**.

**c (ch, cp. 5<sup>1</sup>), g, k, q (qu, cp. 4, 2, a),** throat sounds, called **guttural mutes**.

**d, -t,** teeth (or tongue) sounds, called **dental** (or lingual) **mutes**.

**2. Liquids.** **l, m, n, r.**

More strictly, **l** and **r** are **liquids**, **m** and **n** **nasals**.

**3. f, h,** and **s** are **spirants**.

**h** is sometimes called a **breathing**. **s** is the **sibilant**.

**4. i-consonant** and **v** are **semi-vowels**.

**l, r, s,** and **h** are sometimes classed here.

**5. x** and **z** are **double consonants**.

**4. I.** **Two methods** of pronouncing Latin are used in America, the **Roman** and the **English**. In the **English**

<sup>1</sup> References throughout are to paragraphs.

the sounds as a rule are the same as in English. This is now seldom used.

### SOUNDS OF LETTERS. ROMAN METHOD.

## 2.

## VOWELS.

The **vowels** are the same as in **English**. Broadly speaking, each vowel has only one sound. If the sound of a vowel in a syllable is somewhat prolonged when pronounced, the vowel is said to be **long**. If the sound is shortened, the vowel is said to be **short**.

## LONG.

**ā** as in *ah*.  
**ē** as in *they*.<sup>1</sup>  
**ī** as in *machine*.  
**ō** as in *home*.  
**ū** as *oo* in *tool*.

## SHORT.

**a** as in *sofa*.  
**e** nearly as in *set*.  
**i** nearly as in *tin*.  
**o** as in *melody*.  
**u** as in *put*.

**y** is sounded like the German *ü*, or French *u*.

**a**. When **qu** or **gu** precede a vowel, **u** is treated as a consonant. This is also true of **u** in the forms **huic** (93) and **cuī** (106, 113).

Some authorities, however, consider the **ui** in these forms a diphthong.

## 3.

## DIPHTHONGS.

A **diphthong** is produced by running together the sounds of two vowels.

The more common diphthongs are pronounced as follows:

**ae** as *ai* in *aisle*.

**eu** as *eu* in *feud*.

**au** as *ou* in *out*.

**oe** as *oi* in *soil*.

**ui**, when a diphthong, as *oo-ee*, pronounced rapidly.

## 5.

## CONSONANTS.

Many of these are pronounced as in English. The following require notice:

<sup>1</sup> More strictly, like the French *ê* in *fête*.  
 References throughout are to paragraphs.

**bs** is pronounced as *ps*, **bt** as *pt*.

**c** is hard, as in *cat*.

**g** is hard, as in *go*.

**ch, ph.** It is best to uniformly pronounce **ch** hard, as in *Christian*, and **ph** like *f*, as in *Philip*.

From the standpoint of Latin pronunciation, these letters should be sounded separately, as in the English compound *up-hill*. But these combinations usually occur in words borrowed from the Greek, where **ch** stands for a Greek sound similar to its sound in the German word *ich*, and **ph** stands for *f*.

**i-consonant** is pronounced like *y* in *yet*.

**Final m** is hardly pronounced.

**nc** is pronounced as in *uncle*, **ng** as in *angle*, **ngu** as in *sanguine*.

**s** is always pronounced as in *sin*, and **t** as in *time*.

**v** is pronounced as *w* in *will*.

The **double consonant x** stands for **ks**.

**Doubled consonants** (**pp, tt, etc.**) are **both** pronounced, as *t* in *cat-tail*.

## 6.

### SYLLABLES.

1. A word has as many **syllables** as it has **vowels** and **diphthongs**: *cen-tu-ri-ō-ne*.

2. In dividing a word into syllables, a single consonant is joined to the following vowel: *ho-mi-nēs*.

*a.* But when the word is formed by the union of two or more words (that is, is a compound) the division shows the component parts: *ab-esse*.

3. The **last syllable** of a word is called the **ultima** (in Latin meaning *last*); the syllable preceding the ultima, the **penult** (a word contracted from the Latin *paene*, *almost*, and *ultima*). That preceding the penult is called the **ante-penult**. (*ante* in Latin means *before*.)

### 7. QUANTITY, OR LENGTH OF VOWELS.

1. **Vowels** are **long** (—) or **short** (◡). In this book **long** vowels only are marked.

2. A vowel is short before another vowel or **h**, and generally before **nt** and **nd**.

3. **Diphthongs** are **long**.

4. In compounds vowels representing diphthongs, and vowels resulting from contraction, are **long**:

**inīquus** (for **in-aequus**); **cōgo** (contracted from **co-agō**).

5. A **vowel** is **long** before **nf**, **ns** and **i-consonant**, and generally long before **gn**.

6. A **syllable**<sup>1</sup> is **long** if it contains a **long vowel** or a **diphthong**, or if it has a **short vowel** followed by **two consonants** (except a mute with **l** or **r**); or a double consonant.

### 8. ACCENT.

1. An **accented syllable** is one which is pronounced with greater **stress** of voice than other syllables in the same word.

Latin accent carries with it less stress of voice than English accent.

2. In words of **two syllables**, the accent is upon the **first syllable**: **sil'-va**.

3. In words of more than two syllables, the accent is upon the **penult**, if that is **long**, otherwise upon the antepenult: **a-mī'-cus**.

4. If **-ne** [41] or **-que** [91] be added to a word, the accent falls upon the **last syllable** of the word: **laudat'-ne?** **mensa'-que**.

9. **CASES.** The names of the cases are **Nominative**, **Genitive**, **Dative**, **Accusative**, **Ablative**, **Vocative**.

*a.* There is also a **Locative** case, which is not given in this book, as it rarely occurs in second-year Latin.

*b.* The meanings and uses of the cases will be given in succeeding lessons.

<sup>1</sup> To avoid confusion, the quantity of syllables is not indicated in this book.



**10. GENDER.**

1. There are three genders, **masculine**, **feminine** and **neuter**, as in English.

2. Unlike the English, the **gender** is usually determined by the **ending**.

Thus, **nouns** whose nominative singular ends in **a** are nearly always **feminine**.

*a.* Sometimes gender is determined by the **meaning**, as in English.

*b.* That a word in English is neuter, and hence referred to as "it", does not show that it is neuter in Latin. In Latin "field", "year", and "sword", for instance, are each referred to as "he"; "forest", "road", and "gate", as "she".

3. Names of **males**, **rivers**, **winds** and **months** are **masculine**.

4. Names of **females**, **countries**, **towns**, **islands** and **træes** are **feminine**.

5. **Indeclinable nouns** are **neuter**.

**11. EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE IN PRONUNCIATION.**

1.

VOWELS.

ācritēr, *eagerly*.

āla, *wing*.

āra, *altar*.

Cornēlia.

culpa, *fault*.

fortūna, *chance*.

ēdictum, *proclamation*.

ēmīttō, *I send out*.

Ēpīrus.

alter, *the other (of two)*.

inter, *between*.

tamen, *yet*.

Īdūs.

īra, *anger*.

avis, *bird*.

Asia.

dulcis, *sweet*.

ōlim, *formerly, once*.

ōrātiō, *a speech*.

ōrdō, *rank, order*.

modo, *only*.

Hector.

mercātor, *merchant*.

ūndecim, *eleven*.

ūtilis, *useful*.

ūva, *grape*.

## 2.

## DIPHTHONGS.

Graecia.  
aedificium, *edifice*.  
tubæ, *trumpets*.  
causa, *cause*.  
gaudium, *delight*.  
nauta, *sailor*.

Eurōpa.  
Eurus.  
Euphrātes.  
coepī, *I began*.  
Poenicus.  
poena, *punishment*.

## 3.

## CONSONANTS.

Cicerō,  
Caesar,  
cīvis, *citizen*.  
Charōn.  
schola, *school*.  
cachinnō, *I laugh aloud*.  
genus, *race*.  
grānum, *a grain*.  
gustō, *I taste*.  
iam, *already*.  
iānuā, *door*.  
Iūra.  
Polyphēmus,  
elephantus, *elephant*.  
Philippus.

sēdēs, *seat*.  
rosa, *rose*.  
Mūsa.  
virgō, *virgin*.  
via, *road*.  
verbum, *word*.  
lingua, *tongue*.  
sanguis, *blood*.  
anguis, *snake*.  
quercus, *oak*.  
quondam, *formerly*.  
quī, *who*.  
Suētōnius.  
suāvis, *pleasant*.  
suī, *of himself*.

## 4.

## SYLLABLES.

mā-tri-mo-ni-um, *marriage*.  
lē-gā-ti-ō, *embassy*.  
Hel-vē-ti-ī.  
A-quī-tā-ni-a.  
Ca-ta-man-to-loe-dēs.  
auc-tō-ri-tās, *authority*.  
pulchritūdō, *beauty*.

perspicīō, *I see through*.  
invictus, *unconquered*.  
expīrō, *I breathe forth*.  
dēpōnō, *I put down*.  
cōnferō, *I collect*.  
circumveniō, *I surround*.

## LESSON I.

### 12. SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

puella, *girl*.

puellae, *girls*.

rēgīna, *queen*.

rēgīnae, *queens*.

a. How does the **plural** of the Latin noun differ from the **singular**? Form the plural of the following nouns:

filia, *daughter*.

terra, *land*.

mēnsa, *table*.

via, *road*.

silva, *forest*.

### 13. EXAMPLES.

Via est longa, *The road is long*.

Viae sunt longae, *Roads are long*.

Singular and Plural  
Nominative of First  
Declension.

a. Notice that the **adjective** has a **plural** ending when it modifies a **noun** in the **plural**. If English were like Latin in this respect we would say "Roads are longs."

b. There is no article. **Via** may be translated either *a road* or *the road*; **viae**, *roads* or *the roads*.

### 14. (See the vocabulary on page 22.)

1. Terra est lāta.

2. Cōpiae sunt māgnae.

3. Ubi est mēnsa alta et longa?

4. Multae viae sunt longae.

5. Terrae sunt multae

6. Mēnsa est lāta.

7. Ubi est māgna mēnsa?

8. Estne<sup>1</sup> filia bona?

<sup>1</sup> -ne is the sign of a question, and cannot be translated. It is affixed to the verb, as *estne*, *suntne*, or to *nōn* (*nōnne*).

9. **Mēnsae sunt altae.**
10. **Multae mēnsae sunt māgnae et altae.**
11. **Ubi sunt māgnae silvae?**
12. **Rēgīna est bona.**
13. **Puella et rēgīna<sup>1</sup> sunt bonae.**
14. **Viae sunt lātae.**
15. **Ubi est puella bona ?**

**15.** This exercise is to be translated into Latin. The words needed in the English-Latin exercises of the first six lessons will be found in the Latin-English exercises which immediately precede them.

1. The road is long.
2. Is the road long? (14,<sup>2</sup> note 1.)
3. Are the roads long?
4. Are the tables long?
5. Where are the wide tables?
6. Where are the good girls?
7. Many forests are large.
8. The table is large and high.

<sup>1</sup> Notice the compound subject.

<sup>2</sup> References are to paragraphs.

## LESSON II.

### THE DIRECT OBJECT.

#### 16.

#### EXAMPLES.

<b>Puella tubam portat,</b>	<i>The girl is carrying (or, carries, or, does carry) a trumpet.</i>
<b>Puella tubās portat,</b>	<i>The girl is carrying trumpets.</i>
<b>Puellae tubās portant,</b>	<i>Girls are carrying (or, carry, or, do carry) trumpets.</i>
<b>Rēgīna multās puellās amat,</b>	<i>The queen loves (or, is loving, or, does love) many girls.</i>

a. In these sentences notice the **endings -am** and **-ās**. How do they differ in meaning?

These are the **endings** of the **Accusative Case**. Notice that in these sentences it denotes what is called in English grammar the **direct object** of the verb. To what case in English grammar does this use of the Accusative correspond?

b. How does the plural differ from the singular in the verbs given above? In the same way form the plurals of

**amat, loves.**

**laudat, praises.**

c. Notice that the adjective **multās** agrees with **puellās**, the noun which it modifies, just as the adjectives in Lesson I agree with the nouns which they modify.

17. (See the vocabulary on page 22.)

1. **Puella aquam portat.**
2. **Terra silvās multās habet.**
3. **Rēgīna puellam laudat.**
4. **Ubi est praeda māgna?**

5. *Viae sunt multae et longae.*
6. *Rēgīna rosam habet.*
7. *Filiae rosās habent.*
8. *Puellae aquam portant.*
9. *Ubi sunt cōpiae māgnae ?*
10. *Fīlia tubam habet.*
11. *Puella rēgīnam amat.*
12. *Rēgīna puellās bonās amat.*
13. *Terra māgna viās longās et lātās habet.*
14. *Filiae bonae rēgīnam laudant.*
15. *Puellae multae fīliam bonam laudant.*
16. *Amatne rēgīna bona filiās bonās ?*
17. *Puellae mēnsam altam habent.*
18. *Portantne puellae mēnsam lātam ?*
19. *Rēgīna bona fīliam bonam laudat.*

**18.** (See 15.)<sup>1</sup> Place the verb last in your Latin translation, except in the fourth and ninth sentences.

1. Is the girl carrying a table ?
2. The troops have much plunder.
3. The large country has large forests.
4. Where<sup>2</sup> are the troops ?
5. The queen praises the girls.
6. The girls love the queen.
7. The queen has a large country.
8. The girl is carrying the roses and the trumpet.
9. Does the queen praise the girl ?

<sup>1</sup> References are to paragraphs.

<sup>2</sup>-*ne* (14, note 1) is not used with *ubi*. Cp. 17, 9.

## LESSON III.

19.

### FIRST DECLENSION.

**Declension** is the changing of a Latin **noun** or **adjective** into the forms for the **different cases** (9), as **puella**, for instance, has already been changed into the three case-forms **puellam**, **puellae**, and **puellās**. (16.)

Nouns of the First Declension are **feminine** in gender (10).  
But see 10,3.

### FIRST DECLENSION.

**silva**, *forest*.

#### SINGULAR.

NOMINATIVE	silva	(a) forest (13, b)
GENITIVE	silvæ	of (a) forest
DATIVE	silvæ	to or for (a) forest
ACCUSATIVE	silvam	(a) forest
ABLATIVE	silvā	
VOCATIVE	(silva)	

#### PLURAL.

NOMINATIVE	silvæ	forests
GENITIVE	silvārum	of forests
DATIVE	silvīs	to or for forests
ACCUSATIVE	silvās	forests
ABLATIVE	silvīs	
VOCATIVE	(silvæ)	

a. What is the difference between the **nominative** and **ablative** singular?

b. The meanings of the ablative will be given later.

c. The **vocative** is the case of **address**.

d. The **base** is that part of a word which remains **unchanged** throughout the **declension**. (*silv-* above.)

What are the bases of the following words?

*cōpiīs, viās, rēgīnae, filia, mēnsārum, puellīs, terram.*

The **stem** is the body of a word, to which the endings are attached. The stem of the first declension ends in **a**, which is called the **stem vowel**. This **a**, however, has united by contraction with the vowel of the ending, leaving the base.

e. To learn the **meaning** of a word, notice the **base**. To learn in what **case** a word is, notice the **ending**. The pupil who trains himself to divide Latin words into their bases and endings has mastered one of the points necessary for easy reading.

f. DECLENSION BY ENDINGS.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Base <i>silv</i>	NOM. -a	NOM. -ae
	GEN. -ae	GEN. -ārum
	DAT. -ae	DAT. -īs
	ACC. -am	ACC. -ās
	ABL. -ā	ABL. -īs
	VOC. -a	VOC. -ae

20.

THE INDIRECT OBJECT.

*Rēgīna puellae rosam dat,* *The queen gives a rose to the girl.*

*Rosa puellae est grāta,* *The rose is acceptable to the girl.*

a. What is the case of **puellae** in the first sentence? Indirect Object.

This use of the **Dative** is called the Dative of the **Indirect Object**, and is the same in meaning and use as the **indirect object** in English.

b. Notice the difference between the direct and the indirect objects in the first sentence. Be careful not to confuse these two "objects."

c. The second sentence illustrates one use of the **dative** with **adjectives**.



21. RULE.—The **nominative** is the case of the **subject**.

22. RULE.—The **direct object** of a verb is put in the **accusative**.

23. RULE.—The **indirect object** of a verb is put in the **dative**.

24.

1. *Silvae multae Galliae sunt m̄agnae.*

2. *Fīlia puellae rosam m̄agnam dat.*

3. *Rēgīna fīliae longam m̄ensam dat.*

4. *Estne rosa m̄agna puellae bonae gr̄ata ?*

5. *Rēgīna cōpiās m̄agnās habet.*

6. *Rēgīna terrae puellīs rosās multās dat. Rosae puellīs sunt gr̄atae.*

7. *Puella bonae rēgīnae longam m̄ensam dat.*

8. *Habetne rēgīna lātam m̄ensam?*

9. *Viae Galliae sunt longae.*

o. *Terrae Galliae silvās multās habent.*

i1. *Rēgīna puellās laudat.*

i2. *Rēgīna Galbae terrae praedam dat. Praeda rēgīnae Galbae gr̄ata est.*

i3. *Rēgīna puellās multās amat.*

i4. *Puellae rēgīnae bonae rosās multās et m̄agnās dant.*

i5. *Ubi sunt m̄ensae altae et l̄atae ?*

25. (See 15.) Place the verb at the end, except in the two last sentences.

1. The good girls give a large table to the queen. The table is acceptable to the queen.

2. The daughter of the queen has many large roses. The queen gives the roses of the daughter to the girls.

3. The countries of Gaul have many large forests and long roads.

4. The queen gives the plunder of the land to the troops.

5. Where are the countries of Gaul ?

6. Are the forests of the country large ?

## LESSON IV.

### 26.

### EXAMPLES.

#### The queen gives a rose to the girl.

In this sentence notice that we recognize the word “**queen**” as the **subject**, and “**rose**” as the **direct object** of the verb “gives” because the one precedes and the other follows the verb.

Thus the words in an English sentence follow a fixed order : **subject, verb, object.**

The same sentence in Latin reads :

Order of  
Words.

**Rēgīna puellae rosam dat.**

Notice that we recognize the word **rosam** as **direct object** because of its ending **-m**, and **puellae** as the **indirect object** because of its ending **-ae**.

If the words be rearranged,

**Rēgīna rosam puellae dat,**

**Rosam rēgīna puellae dat,**

the meaning remains unchanged, for **rosam**, so long as it keeps the ending **-m**, cannot be anything but the direct object, and **puellae**, so long as it keeps the ending **-ae**, will in this sentence remain the indirect object.

*a.* In a **declarative** Latin sentence the **subject** is usually placed **first**.

*b.* The verb (excepting **est** and **sunt**) nearly always comes last.

## 27.

## EXAMPLES.

Rēgīna Cornēliam, filiam Galbae, laudat, *The queen praises Cornelia, the daughter of Galba.* Apposition.

Rēgīna Cornēliae, puellae, tubam dat, *The queen gives a trumpet to Cornelia, the girl.*

a. Notice that **filiam** and **Cornēliam** both refer to the **same person** and are in the **same case**. This is also true of **Cornēliae** and **puellae**.

b. When a noun is joined to another noun as **filiam** is to **Cornēliam**, or **puellae** to **Cornēliae**, it is said to be in **apposition** with it.

**28 RULE.**—**Appositives** agree in **case** with the nouns which they limit.

a. An appositive may often be best translated into English by a noun introduced by “as” or “of.” For example:

**Terra Gallia erat māgna,** *The land of Gaul was large.*

**Galba ad Galliam lēgātus Gallīs properat,** *Galba hastens to Gaul as an envoy to the Gauls.*

## 29.

## EXAMPLES.

**Cornēlia, puella, erat filia rēgīnae,** *Cornelia, the girl, was the daughter of the queen.*

a. In this sentence **fīlia**, which is in the predicate of the sentence, denotes the same person as **Cornēlia**, the subject. Nouns used in this way are called **predicate nouns**.

Predicate  
Nouns.

b. How does a **predicate nominative** differ from an **appositive**?

Which is the predicate nominative, and which the appositive, in the following sentence?

**Cornēlia, filia Galbae, erat bona puella,** *Cornelia, the daughter of Galba, was a good girl.*

**30. RULE.**—A **predicate noun** agrees with the **subject** in **case**.

## 31.

## EXAMPLE.

**Multae silvae sunt in terrā Galliā, Many forests are in the land Gaul.**

a. Notice that the preposition **in** is **followed** by the **Ab-**  
**lative** case.

*In with  
Ablative.*

## 32.

1. Puella est filia rēgīnae.
2. Māgna silva erat in terrā.
3. In terrīs Galliae erant longae et lātae viae.
4. Ubi est puella, filia Cornēliae? In silvā est filia Cornēliae.
5. Cornēlia, puella, filiae rēgīnae aquam dat.
6. Estne rosa in mēnsā?
7. Habetne terra Helvētia silvās? In Helvētiā, terrā Galliae, sunt multae et māgnae silvae.
8. Cornēliae tuba erat in altā mēnsā.
9. Erantne silvae Galliae multae et māgnae?
10. Gallia est māgna et lāta terra.
11. Puellae Cornēliam, Galbae bonam filiam, amant.
12. Filiae Galbae Cornēliae puellae rosam māgnam dant.
13. Grātae sunt rēgīnae rosae.
14. Cōpiae terrae erant māgnae.
15. In māgnīs silvīs erant longae viae.
16. Praeda terrae est māgna.
17. Bonae puellae filiae Galbae tubās dant.

**33.** (Words in parentheses are to be omitted in the Latin.)

1. Is Gaul a large land?
2. In the countries of Gaul are many troops.
3. In Helvetia, a land of Gaul, are large forests.

4. In the land of Gaul <sup>1</sup> is a large and wide forest.
5. The good girls give large roses to Cornelia, the daughter of the queen.
6. The roses are acceptable to Cornelia.
7. The queen praises the girls.
8. The troops of the queen are in the forest.
9. Are the roses upon the table?
10. Where is the daughter of Galba?
11. Galba loves (his) daughter.

<sup>1</sup> Not genitive. (28.)

## LESSON V.

### THE DATIVE OF THE POSSESSOR.

34.

EXAMPLE.

**Terrae est m̄agna silva,** *There is a large forest for the land,* that is, *the land has a large forest.*

Observe that this sentence has the same meaning as if it were **Terra m̄agnam silvam habet.** The dative thus used is called the **Dative of the Possessor.**

35. RULE.—The **dative** is used with **sum** to denote the **possessor**, the **thing possessed** being the **subject**.

Dative of the  
Possessor.

36.

1. Rēgīna m̄agnam rosam habet.
2. Rēgīnae est rosa m̄agna.
3. Rēgīnae sunt rosae multae.
4. Tuba est puellae. Tuba puellae est gr̄ata.
5. Cornēliae, Galbae filiae, sunt rosae multae.
6. Aqua m̄agna est in viā.
7. Suntne multae rēgīnae bonae ?
8. Cornēliae filiāe bonae sunt tubae longae.
9. Galliae terrīs sunt silvae multae.
10. Ubi erat puella, Galbae filiā bona ?
11. Praeda in silvā erat.
12. Cornēlia filiās bonās habet. Cornēliae sunt filiae multae.
13. Galliae terrae m̄agnae et l̄atae erant silvae multae.
14. Rosa Cornēliae est in aquā.
15. Galba rēgīnae longam mēnsam dat.

16. Estne aqua alta ?

17. Amatne Galba filiās ?

18. Cornēlia, filia Galbae, māgnam rosam rēgīnae dat. Grāta rēgīnae est rosa Cornēliae. Cornēliae tubam longam rēgīna dat. Cornēliae est tuba longa.

19. Rēgīnae cōpiae erant māgnae.

37. (When possible, translate the following sentences in two or three ways.)

1. A large forest is in the country of Helvetia (33. n. 1).

2. Cornelia has a rose.

3. Is Cornelia a good girl ?

4. Where was the plunder of the land of Helvetia ?

5. Has the queen a table ?

6. Has the girl, the daughter of the queen, many roses ?

7. The water in the road is deep.

## LESSON VI.

38.

EXAMPLE.

Galba in silvam hastam portat, *Galba carries a spear into the forest.*

a. Notice that the preposition **in** here means "into," and is followed by the **accusative silvam**, which is **not a direct object**; as is **hastam**. In with  
Accusative.

39.

EXAMPLES.

In silvam hastās portant, *They are carrying spears into the forest.*

In silvam properat, *He (or she) hurries into the forest.* Omission of  
Subject.

a. Notice that there is **no subject** expressed in these sentences, but that the subjects "they" and "he" are included in the **verbs** and expressed in the **endings**.

b. The general sense of the sentence determines whether the subject expressed in the singular by the **ending** be "**he**," "**she**," or "**it**."

40.

1. Galba in **terram** Galliam properat.
2. In **silvās** properant.
3. In **terram** multās hastās portant.
4. In **terrās** praedam māgnam portat.
5. Rōma multās et lātās **viās** habet.
6. In **terrā** Galliā **sunt** multae **viae**. **Terrīs** Galliae **sunt** longae **viae**. Galliae **sunt**ne multae **silvae**? **Viae** in **silvīs** terrae Galliae **sunt** longae sed nōn lātae.



7. Galba in **silvam** longās hastās portat.  
 8. Tuba filiae Galbae erat in altā mēnsā.  
 9. Galbae filiās laudant.  
 10. Puellae hastam **dat**. Nōn grāta puellae **est** hasta.  
 11. Puellae, filiae Cornēliae, **sunt** in Rōmā.  
 12. In Rōmam māgnam praedam multārum **terrārum** Galliae portant.  
 13. In portā erat rēgina bona.  
 14. In **terrā** Helvētiā **cōpiās habet**. In Galliam **cōpiaē** properant.  
 15. In **silvās terrārum** Galliae properant.  
 16. Hasta longa **est** in **viā**.  
 17. Filia bona **est** rēginae.  
 18. Rōmae **viae sunt** lātae.  
 19. **Cōpiaē** māgnae **sunt** in **terrā** Galliā.  
 20. Ubi **est** aqua?  
 21. **Cōpiās** māgnās in Helvētiā nōn **habent**.

## 41. WORD-LIST.

<b>cōpia, cōpiaē, a supply</b> (of anything); plural also <i>troops</i> .	<b>-ne, sign of a question</b> (8. 4). <b>est, is.</b> <b>sunt, are.</b>
<b>silva, silvae, a forest.</b>	<b>dat, he, she, or it gives, is giving, or aōes give.</b>
<b>terra, terrae, a country, or land.</b>	<b>habet, he, she, or it has, is having, or does have.</b>
<b>via, viae, a road.</b>	
<b>et, and.</b>	

42. (When possible, translate the following sentences in two or three ways. Omit words in brackets.)

1. He hurries into the land of Helvetia.
2. In Gaul (there) are many troops. The troops have much plunder. They are carrying the plunder into the forests.
3. The girl, the daughter of Galba, is in the road.

4. They give the spear to the good girl, the daughter of Cornelia.
5. Has Galba a daughter? He has many daughters.
6. Where is Galba's spear?
7. The girls have trumpets.
8. Does the queen praise the girls?

## VOCABULARY FOR THE FIRST SIX LESSONS.

<b>alta</b> , <i>high, deep.</i>	<b>longa</b> , <i>long.</i>
<b>amat</b> , <i>loves.</i> 16, <i>b.</i> 39.	<b>māgna</b> , <i>large.</i>
<b>aqua</b> , <i>water.</i>	<b>mēnsa</b> , <i>table.</i>
<b>bona</b> , <i>good.</i>	<b>multa</b> , <i>much.</i> Plural. <i>many.</i>
<b>cōpia</b> , 41.	<b>-ne</b> , 14, note 1.
<b>Cornēlia</b> , <i>Cornelia.</i>	<b>nōn</b> , <i>not.</i>
<b>dat</b> , <i>gives.</i> 16, <i>b.</i> 39.	<b>porta</b> , <i>gate.</i>
<b>erat</b> , <i>was.</i> 16, <i>b.</i> 39.	<b>portat</b> , <i>carries.</i> 16, <i>b.</i> 39.
<b>est</b> , <i>is.</i> 39.	<b>praeda</b> , <i>plunder.</i>
<b>et</b> , <i>and.</i>	<b>properat</b> , <i>hastens.</i> 16, <i>b.</i> 39.
<b>filia</b> , <i>daughter.</i>	<b>puella</b> , <i>girl.</i>
<b>Galba</b> , <i>Galba.</i>	<b>rēgīna</b> , <i>queen.</i>
<b>Gallia</b> , <i>The land Gaul.</i>	<b>Rōma</b> , <i>Rome.</i>
<b>grāta</b> , <i>acceptable.</i>	<b>rosa</b> , <i>rose.</i>
<b>habet</b> , <i>has.</i> 16, <i>b.</i> 39.	<b>sed</b> , <i>but.</i>
<b>hasta</b> , <i>spear.</i>	<b>silva</b> , 41.
<b>Helvētia</b> , <i>The district Hel-</i>	<b>sunt</b> , <i>are.</i> 39.
<i>vetia.</i>	<b>terra</b> , 41.
<b>in</b> , see 31 and 38.	<b>tuba</b> , <i>trumpet.</i>
<b>lāta</b> , <i>wide.</i>	<b>ubi?</b> <i>where?</i> 18, note 2.
<b>laudat</b> , <i>praises.</i> 16, <i>b.</i> 39.	<b>via</b> , 41.

## LESSON VII.

### SECOND DECLENSION.

**43.** The **stem** ends in **o**, which usually disappears by combination with the case-ending.

**44.** Nouns of the **second declension** ending in **-um** are **neuter**. **Stem and Gender.**

**Others are masculine.** (But see 10, 3 and 4.)

<b>45.</b>	MASCULINE.	NEUTER.
	<b>mūrus</b> , <i>wall</i> .	<b>oppidum</b> , <i>town</i> .

#### SINGULAR.

NOM.	mūrus,	<i>(a) wall</i>	oppidum
GEN.	mūrī,	<i>of (a) wall</i>	oppidī
DAT.	mūrō,	<i>to or for (a) wall</i>	oppidō
ACC.	mūrum,	<i>(a) wall</i>	oppidum
ABL.	mūrō		oppidō
VOC.	(mūre)		(oppidum)

#### PLURAL.

NOM.	mūrī,	<i>walls</i>	oppida
GEN.	mūrōrum,	<i>of walls</i>	oppidōrum
DAT.	mūrīs,	<i>to or for walls</i>	oppidīs
ACC.	mūrōs,	<i>walls</i>	oppida
ABL.	mūrīs		oppidīs
VOC.	(mūrī)		(oppida)

*a.* Nouns in **-us** of this declension have a special form in **e**, which forms their **vocative case**, or case of **address**.  
**Amīce**, *friend*.

*b.* The **vocative** of other nouns in all declensions is the **same** in form as the **nominative**. But cp.

**Vocative Case.**

c. How many cases in **mūrus** can you find which have the same ending?

d. Which cases of **oppidum** are alike in the singular? which in the plural?

e. DECLENSION BY ENDINGS.

SINGULAR.

	MASCULINE.		NEUTER.
Base <b>mūr</b>	NOM. <b>-us</b>	Base <b>oppid</b>	NOM. <b>-um</b>
	GEN. <b>-ī</b>		GEN. <b>-ī</b>
	DAT. <b>-ō</b>		DAT. <b>-ō</b>
	ACC. <b>-um</b>		ACC. <b>-um</b>
	ABL. <b>-ō</b>		ABL. <b>-ō</b>
	VOC. <b>-e</b>		VOC. <b>-um</b>

PLURAL.

NOM. <b>-ī</b>	NOM. <b>-a</b>
GEN. <b>-ōrum</b>	GEN. <b>-ōrum</b>
DAT. <b>-īs</b>	DAT. <b>-īs</b>
ACC. <b>-ōs</b>	ACC. <b>-a</b>
ABL. <b>-īs</b>	ABL. <b>-īs</b>
VOC. <b>-ī</b>	VOC. <b>-a</b>

46. (See the vocabularies on pages 259 and 279.)

1. Mārce, **amīce**, **quid est in oppidō?** In oppidō **amīcī lēgātī** tēla et **equōs** habent. Cōpia **equōrum** mägna est in oppidō. Mägnam cōpīam tēlōrum **lēgātī** populō dant. Mägnum est **numerus captīvōrum** in oppidō. Cōpīae oppidī sunt mägnae.

2. Estne Mārci **amīcus lēgātus?** Galba, **amīcus** Mārci et populī, est **lēgātus** in Rōmā, Ītaliae oppidō. Dōna suntne tribūnis, populī **lēgātīs?** **Lēgātus** tēlum, dōnum populī, habet. Tēla sunt Galbae, **lēgātō**.

3. Mägnum est **numerus** oppidōrum. **Lēgātī** oppidōrum sunt **captīvī**. Multi sunt **captīvī**. In silvis sunt **equī captīvōrum**. **Captīvī** multa dōna **amīcīs** dant.

4. **Numerus** mägnum tēlōrum est Mārco, tribūnō, **lēgātī**

**amīcō.** Multa tēla tribūnus habet et populō oppidī dat. In oppidō sunt equī et tēla, dōna amīcōrum. Māgnum numerum equōrum in silvā tribūnus habet. Quid amīcīs Mārcus dat? Equōs et tēla, dōna, Mārcus amīcīs lēgātī dat.

## 47.

## WORD-LIST.

numerus, -ī, *number.*

amīcus, -ī, *friend.*

captīvus, -ī, *prisoner.*

equus, -ī, *horse.*

lēgātus, -ī, *an envoy, also an officer in the Roman army, a "legate".*

in, preposition; with ablative, *in* or *on*; with accusative, *into*, *against*.

quid?, *what?* Neuter nominative or accusative of interrogative pronoun quis? (Lesson XVIII.)

## 48.

## HINTS FOR WRITING LATIN.

Every word except proper names used in the sentences to be turned into Latin has either been given in the word-lists or else may be found in the Latin-English exercise for the same lesson. For proper names look in the Latin-English vocabulary. Do not look up the words\* in any English-Latin vocabulary. To do so may seem the quickest way for the first few lessons, but it teaches one very little Latin, and in the long run is sure to prove much the slowest method.

Study 26 again. Do not put down your words at random.

Words not to be rendered in Latin are placed in parentheses.

## 49. (Omit words in brackets.)

1. The legates are friends of the captives.
  2. They give a large number of horses to (their) friends.
  3. Do they give the horses to the prisoners, the friends of the envoys?
  4. Marcus, has the legate a horse?
  5. The legate's friend has a horse in the road.
  6. Are (there) large forests in the land of Gaul?
- (33. n. 1.)

## LESSON VIII.

### ADJECTIVES OF FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

50.

#### EXAMPLES.

MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<b>Bonus Galba,</b>	<b>Bona Cornēlia,</b>	<b>Bonum dōnum,</b>
<i>Good Galba.</i>	<i>Good Cornelia.</i>	<i>A good gift.</i>
NOM. Bonus Galba	Bona Cornēlia	Bonum dōnum
GEN. Bonī Galbae	Bonae Cornēliae	Bonī dōnī
DAT. Bonō Galbae	Bonae Cornēliae	Bonō dōnō
ACC. Bonum Galbam	Bonam Cornēliam	Bonum dōnum
ABL. Bonō Galbā	Bonā Cornēliā	Bonō dōnō
VOC. (Bone Galba)	(Bona Cornēlia)	(Bonum dōnum)

*a.* Observe that **bonus** agrees in **gender** with the **noun** which it limits.

*b.* Adjectives of the **first** and **second declensions** have **three** sets of **terminations**, in order to agree with any noun in any case. The **masculine** is declined like **mūrus**, the **feminine** like **silva**, and the **neuter** like **oppidum**.

51. Learn the declension of **bonus** (474).

*a.* Decline **equus dēfessus**, *tired horse*, and **grātum dōnum**, *pleasing gift*.

## 52.

## EXAMPLES.

**Equus est māgnus,** *The horse is large.*

**Equi sunt māgnī,** *Horses are large.*

**Oppidum est parvum,** *The town is small.*

**Oppida sunt parva,** *The towns are small.*

**Galba est bonus,** *Galba is good.*

**Predicate  
Adjectives.**

Adjectives used after **est** and **sunt**, as in these sentences, are called **predicate adjectives**.

How do they differ from **predicate nouns**? (29.)

## 53.

1. Dōna **multa** bonae filiae Mārci sunt.

2. Via Galbae **dēfessī** filiis **dēfessīs** est **longa**.

3. Dōnum bonī Mārci Galbae bonō est **grātum**.

4. Mārcus Galbae filius in **oppidum** tēla dōna bona **portat**.

5. Filiō bonō tribūnī equi sunt **grātī**.

6. In terrā sunt silvae **māgnae**. **Māgnus** est in terrā Galliā silvārum numerus. **Longae** viae sunt in silvis. **Nōn grāta** est tribūnīs **dēfessīs** lēgātōrum in silvam fuga. **Nōne grāta** est populō terrae fuga in silvā captivōrum?

7. Mūrus **altus** est in silvā. **Māgnam** cōpiam tēlōrum equi et captivī in silvam **portant**. Filiis Mārci **grāta** in silvā sunt tēla, dōna amicōrum. **Dēfessī** sunt tribūnōrum captivī. Equi bonōrum lēgātōrum in **oppidum** captivōs **dēfessōs** **portant**.

8. **Altum** mūrum habetne **māgnum oppidum**? **Longus** et **altus** mūrus est **oppidō māgnō**. **Altō** et **longō** mūrō **oppidī** sunt **multae** portae.

## 54.

## WORD-LIST.

**altus, -a, -um,** *high, tall, deep.*

**dēfessus, -a, -um,** *weary, tired.*

**grātus, -ā, -um,** *pleasing* (not used of persons).

**longus, -a, -um,** *long.*

**māgnus, -a, -um,** *large.*

**multus, -a, -um,** *much; plural, many.*

**oppidum, -ī, n.,** *town.*

**nōn,** *not.*

**portat,** *is carrying.*

**55.**

1. The tall captive is tired.
2. What is the horse carrying into the town ?
3. The friends of the ambassador are in the town.
4. He gives a horse to (his) tired friend.
5. The legate has a large number of horses in the forest.
6. Galba, the friend of the captive, is in the road.
7. The road is long and the captives are tired.
8. The legate, the friend of the tribune, is not in the town.



## LESSON IX.

### 56. SECOND DECLENSION—CONTINUED.

**Ager**, m., *field*.    **Vir**, m., *man*.    **Puer**, m., *boy*.

#### SINGULAR.

NOM.	ager	vir	puer
GEN.	agrī	virī	puerī
DAT.	agrō	virō	puerō
ACC.	agrūm	virūm	puerūm
ABL.	agrō	virō	puerō
VOC.	(ager)	(vir)	(puer)

#### PLURAL.

NOM.	agrī	virī	puerī
GEN.	agrōrum	virōrum	puerōrum
DAT.	agrīs	virīs	puerīs
ACC.	agrōs	virōs	puerōs
ABL.	agrīs	virīs	puerīs
VOC.	(agrī)	(virī)	(puerī)

a. How does the declension of **ager** differ from that of **puer**?

b. Most nouns and adjectives in **-er** of this declension are declined like **ager**.

### 57.

Nouns in **-ius** and **-ium** shorten the genitive singular ending **-īi** to **-ī**. The **accent** remains **unchanged**.

**cōnsilium**, gen. **cōnsilī**, *advice, plan*.

**filius**, gen. **filī**, *son*.

**Pompēius**, gen. **Pompēī**, *Pompey*.

The **vocative** singular of proper names in **-ius** and of **filius** also ends in **ī**. **Antonius**, vocative, **Antonī**.

## 58.

1. Captivī aegrī nōn multum frūmentum habent.
2. **Liber** populus **liberam** terram habet.
3. Equī nostrī sunt in **agrīs**.
4. Equī nigri aegrī Galbae frūmentum nōn habent.
5. Nōne est aeger Mārci equus niger ?
6. Mūrī oppidi nostrī sunt altī.
7. Amīcus noster est aeger.
8. Estne nigrō equō multum frūmentum magnō in **agrō** ?  
Frūmentum equōrum est in **agrīs**. Māgna cōpia frūmenti est in **agrō** aegrō equō.
9. In **conciliō virī cōnsilium** dant. Nōn grātum in **conciliō** est **cōnsilium** nostrōrum lēgātōrum **liberīs virīs**. In nostrō **conciliō liberōrum virōrum cōnsilium** est bonum.
10. Estne filia bonī Galbae in **agrō** ? In mūrō est Cornēlia, Galbae lēgātī filia.
11. Bonōrum **virōrum cōnsilium** est grātum. Grātum **cōnsilium** in oppidō nostrō bonus lēgātus populō dat.
12. Māgnam cōpiam frūmenti in terrā Galliā nigri captivī in oppida portant. Multa tēla in terram Galliam lēgātus portat.
13. Māgnum est **concilium virōrum** Rōmae. Nōn māgnum est **concilium liberāe** Galliae.

## 59.

## WORD-LIST.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p><b>ager, agrī</b>, m., <i>field</i>; plural, <i>the country</i> (as distinguished from the town).</p> <p><b>vir, virī</b>, m., <i>man</i>.</p> | <p><b>cōnsilium, -ī</b>, <i>advice, plan, skill, prudence</i>.</p> <p><b>concilium, -ī</b>, <i>council</i>.</p> <p><b>liber, liberā, liberum</b>, <i>free</i>; plural, m., often <i>children</i>.</p> |
|---|---|

## 60.

474.

1. The man's children are tired.
2. The horses are not in the town, but<sup>1</sup> in the country.

<sup>1</sup> sed.

3. He gives advice to the children.
4. In the council the advice of (his) friends was not acceptable to the envoy.
5. The captive does not have friends in the council of the legates.
6. Cornelia is the daughter (27) of Marcus the legate, the friend of the captives.
7. The roads in the forest are long.
8. The troops of the countries of Gaul are in the towns.

## LESSON X.

**61.** Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present imperative and infinitive of **sum** (486). **The Verb Sum.**

**62.** 1. Est, erat, erit. 2. Sunt, erant, erunt. 3. Sumus, erāmus, erimus. 4. Sum, este, erās. 5. Eram, es, esse. 6. Erō, eritis. 7. Estis, erātis, eris.

**63.** In the preceding lessons verb-forms have been used in the **third** person. The forms of the verb **sum** show that there are **endings** to denote the **first** and **second** persons as well. **Agreement of Verb with Subject.**

*a.* There are a few such endings in the English language; as, "thou lovest," "he loveth." The English commonly uses the pronoun with the verb, which is seldom done in Latin.

Is "thou," in "thou lovest," really necessary to complete the meaning?

### **64.**

1. Tū, O puer, Galbae aegrī es filius.

2. Dēfessi erunt tuōrum amicōrum liberī.

3. **Ibi nūntius tēla** puerō dat.

4. Amicus eris puerō, bonī virī filiō.

5. In Galliā multa **hiberna** Sextius lēgātus habet. Nōn magna sunt **hiberna**, **sed** lēgātō erunt grāta.

6. Mārcus est **nūntius**. Mārcō sunt multa **tēla**. Puer erit bonī Mārcī amicus. Mārcī amicus erō. Mārcī **nūnti** erimus amici. Estne bonum nostrum cōnsilium?

7. In Italiā **frūmentum** habet. Equi multi captivōrum in **hiberna** Sexti Mārcī tili **arma** portant. In **hibernis** erant multī virī, **sed** nōn captivi erant. Mārcus tribūnus in **hiberna**

Sexti nūntiōrum arma portat. Arma nūnti in hibernis boni lēgātī erunt.

8. Cōpia māgna frūmentī dēfessō equō grāta erit. Pueri boni, este amīcī aegrī equī.

9. Ibi arma nōn erunt.

10. Tū in māgnis hibernis eris, sed arma tua in oppidō erunt.

11. Ibi oppidum nōn erit māgnum.

## 65.

## WORD-LIST.

nūntius, -ī, messenger.

frūmentum, -ī, grain, provisions.

tēlum, -ī, weapon (especially a dart).

hiberna, -ōrum,<sup>1</sup> (plural only) the winter quarters for an army.

arma, -ōrum, (in plural only) weapons (of all kinds, both for attack and defence).

ibi, in that place. Adverb.

sed, but.

## 66.

1. They give a javelin to the boys, the friends of the messenger.

2. There<sup>2</sup> is a large supply of grain in the town, but there are no darts there.<sup>3</sup>

3. They are carrying much grain and many weapons into the winter camp.<sup>4</sup>

4. The winter camp of the legate is in the forest.

5. The man has a long javelin. Is he carrying the javelin into the winter camp?

6. The children of the messenger are giving (his) weapons to the captives.

<sup>1</sup> The full form *castra hiberna* is seldom used.

<sup>2</sup> Notice the two uses of the word "there" in English. The first of these is not found at all in Latin.

<sup>3</sup> For the adverb of place use *ibi*.

<sup>4</sup> Do not forget that this word is plural in Latin.

## LESSON XI.

### THE VERB SUM—CONTINUED.

**67.** Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative of **sum**. (486.)

**68.**

#### EXAMPLES.

**Frumentum equis portatur,** *The grain is carried by horses.*

**Marcus gladio Galbam vulnerat,** *Marcus wounds Galba with a sword.* Ablative of Means  
or Instrument.

*a.* Notice that the **ablatives equis** and **gladio** tell us with what, or **by means of what**, some deed is accomplished.

**69. RULE.**—The **means** or **instrument** of an action is expressed by the **ablative**.

**70.**

1. Liber vir captivus fuerat.

2. Magna erit nova porta.

3. Filius nostri amici **gladio** cum multis viris **pugnat**.

4. Multos Graecos in **bellō** armis Romani vulnerant.

5. In terrā Galliā fuerant multae silvae. Magnus fuit numerus silvarum et agrorum magnā in terrā Germaniā, sed **pauca** fuerunt oppida. **Paucae** et longae viae fuerunt magnis in silvis et agris Germaniae.

6. Oppidō fuerant mūri et portae. Novum est oppidum et **pauci** sunt viri, sed altus est mūrus. **Gladios** multos amici novō **tribūnō** dant. In altō mūrō oppidī sunt viri.

**Populō** oppidī victōria in **bellō** erit grāta.

7. Hibernis mūri alti fuerant.

8. **Gladium** novum filiō Mārcus dat. Gladiō virōs **pau-**  
**cōs** filius Mārci vulnerat.

9. Cōnsilium novum lēgātōrum viris in conciliō nōn erit  
grātum.

10. Portae multae erunt longō in mūrō.

11. Equi māgnum in oppidum multum frūmentum portant.

12. Ibi māgnus numerus **gladiōrum** fuit in viā.

13. In **bellō** tēlis **paucōs**, sed **gladiis** multōs, vulnerant.

14. **Populō** grātum dōnum dat.

15. Multum frūmentum equis in oppidum portat, et **populō**  
dat.

16. Dēfessi pueri arma **tribūni** nōn portant.

17. In oppidō frūmentum nōn erit. In agris frūmentum  
multum erit, sed māgnae sunt silvae et longae sunt viae.

## 71.

## WORD-LIST.

**bellum**, -ī, *war*.

**gladius**, -ī, *sword*.

**populus**, -ī, *people*.

**pauci**, -ae, -a, *few*.

**pūgnat**, *is fighting*.

**tribūnus**, -ī, *tribune*, some-  
times *lieutenant*. There  
were six military tribunes  
in each legion (157) of the  
Roman army. Their du-  
ties varied as the general-  
in-chief saw fit.

72. Words will sometimes occur in these exercises which  
are not given as definitions in the vocabularies, but the pupil  
will always be able to find suitable words or expressions in  
the Latin vocabulary at his command.

1. In the forests and open country<sup>1</sup> of Gaul Cæsar  
and the Romans are fighting. The Romans are  
wounding many men with<sup>2</sup> (their) weapons. The  
Gauls are wounding a few Romans by means of (their)  
swords and javelins. This<sup>3</sup> will be acceptable to the  
men in the council, but not to the people in the town.  
Many men in town are friends of the Gauls.

<sup>1</sup> ager.

<sup>2</sup> 69.

<sup>3</sup> hōc (neuter singular).

2. The Romans are fighting in the woods. The arms of the Romans are swords and javelins. The Gauls are wounding many Romans by means of (their) long javelins. They wound the horse of the tribune. But the legate is in the winter camp, and has many men and horses, and large supplies of grain. He hastens (39) with (his) troops into the woods. There (66, n. 2) they wound many of the Gauls by means of (their) javelins and swords.



## LESSON XII.

### FIRST CONJUGATION. $\bar{A}$ VERBS.

**amō** (stem **amā**), *love*.

Principal parts: **amō**, **amāre**, **amāvī**, **amātus**.

**73.** Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of **amō**. (480.)

*a.* A **verb** in the **Active Voice** represents its **subject** as active (that is, usually, as **doing something**); for instance,

The man hits the boy.

*b.* A **verb** in the **Passive Voice** represents its **subject** as being **acted upon**; for instance,

The man is hit by the boy.

**74.** 1. Amat, amābat, amābit. 2. Amātur, amābātur, amābitur. 3. Amant, amantur, amābam. 4. Amābant, amābuntur, amābar. 5. Amābunt, amābantur, amā. 6. Amō, amāre, amāri. 7. Amor, amābāmur, amābāmus. 8. Amābō, amābor, amāmur. 9. Amāmus, amābimur, amāminī. 10. Amābimus, amāre.

**75.** Inflect, that is, repeat the tenses of, these verbs as you have inflected **amō**:

**nūntiō**, **nūntiāre**, **nūntiāvī**, **nūntiātus**, *to report or tell*.  
**portō**, **portāre**, **portāvī**, **portātus**, *to carry*.

*a.* To find the stem, drop **-re** of the infinitive.

## 76.

-ō or -m	-mus	-r	-mur	
-s	-tis	-ris	-minī	Personal
-t	-nt	-tur	-ntur	Endings.

These are called the **Personal Endings**. In what tenses are they to be found? What tenses and moods do not have them? Are they found in the tenses of **sum** as well as of **amō**? What do they mean?

## 77.

## EXAMPLES.

**Galba gladium portat**, *Galba is carrying a sword.* **Ablative of Agent.**

**Gladius ā Galbā portātur**, *A sword is being carried by Galba.*

**Mārcus gladiō vulnerātur**, *Marcus is wounded by means of a sword.*

**Virī ā lēgātō tubā vocābantur**, *The men were called by the legate by means of a trumpet.*

a. Notice that the **object** of the **active verb** in both Latin and English becomes the **subject** of the **passive**, while the **subject** (the **doer** or **agent**) of the **active** is in Latin expressed with the passive by the **ablative** with **ā** or **ab**, which corresponds to the preposition "by."

b. The last two sentences illustrate the difference between the **Ablative of Agent** and the **Ablative of Means**. The **Ablative of Agent** is used regarding **persons**, the **Ablative of Means** regarding **animals** or **things**.

**78. RULE.**—The **agent** with a **passive verb** is expressed by the **ablative** with **ā** or **ab**.

## 79.

1. Vir tēlum in hiberna portābit.
2. Tēlum in oppidum ā virō portābitur.
3. Galba Mārcum amicum amābat.
4. Mārcus ā Galbā amābātur.
5. Liberī, nostrum amicum amābitis.

6. Noster amicus **ā** liberis aegrīs **amābitur**.
7. Quid populō **ab** amicō nostrō **nūntiābitur**?
8. Frūmentum et tēla in oppidum **ā** captivō bonō **portābuntur**. In hiberna captivus properat.
9. **Ā** multis **amāmur**.
10. Cōnsilium nūnti **ā** Galbā **nūntiābitur**.
11. **Nūntiābitne** Galba in conciliō nūnti cōnsilium?
12. Galbae tēlum **ā** filiō in oppidum **portābātur**.
13. Filius Galbae arma in oppidum **portābat**.
14. Victōria populō **ā** puerō **nūntiābitur**.
15. **Ā** liberis **amābiminī**.
16. Tribūnus **cum** viris **pūgnābit**. Tēlis et gladiis **pūgnant**. Tribūnus gladiō et tēlis **vulnerābitur**.
17. In hibernis tēlis, sed in agrō gladiis, tribūnus **cum** viris **pūgnābat**.
18. Rōmānōrum armīs Graeci **vulnerābantur**. Graeci Rōmānōs nōn **amābant**.
19. Arma tribūnōrum **ā** dēfessīs viris nōn **portābantur**.
20. Quis frūmentum in oppidum **portābit**? Aeger est tribūnus, sed quid filius **nūntiat**? **Nūntiat**, "**Ā** captivis frūmentum in oppidum **portābitur**."

## 80.

## WORD-LIST.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>amō</b> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, <i>to like or love.</i>                                    | <b>vulnerō</b> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, <i>to wound.</i>   |
| <b>nūntiō</b> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, <i>to report or tell.</i>                               | <b>ā</b> (before a consonant), <b>ab</b> (before a vowel), preposition followed by ablative, <i>by, from.</i>        |
| <b>portō</b> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, <i>to carry.</i>   | <b>cum</b> , preposition followed by ablative, <i>together with</i> , sometimes <i>with</i> . Denotes accompaniment. |
| <b>pūgnō</b> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, <i>to fight</i> . Followed by <b>cum</b> , <i>with</i> . |  |

## 81. (See 72.)

The children of the town are carrying the weapons of the lieutenant into the woods. This (72, n. 3) will

be told to the lieutenant by a boy and will not be pleasing (to him). He will tell the children,<sup>1</sup> "Boys, carry the weapons back again."<sup>2</sup> But the children do not like the lieutenant, and do not carry back<sup>3</sup> the weapons, but hasten (39) into the winter camp and tell the captives, "The lieutenant has no weapons." But the lieutenant tells the boy Marcus, the son<sup>3</sup> of Galba, "Marcus, hasten into the woods and carry (my) javelins into the winter camp." Marcus will carry the javelins to<sup>4</sup> the lieutenant.

<sup>1</sup> Dative.

<sup>2</sup> *rūrsus*.

<sup>3</sup> *filius*.

<sup>4</sup> *ad* (not dative).

## LESSON XIII.

### FIRST CONJUGATION.—CONTINUED.

**82.** Learn the perfect, pluperfect and future perfect indicative, active and passive, of **amō**. (480.)

*a.* The participle **amātus**, used in the compound forms of the passive, is declined like **bonus**, and is treated in **all respects** like an adjective. (50. 474.)

**Cornēlia amāta est**, *Cornelia was loved.*

**Mārcus amātus est.**

**Frūmentum portātum est**, *Grain was carried.*

**Galba amātus est.**

**Amātī sunt**, *They were loved.*

**83.** Verbs have **three stems**, which are given in the Principal Parts: **Portō, portāre, portāvī**, Use of Principal Parts.  
**portātus**; **Dō, dare, dedī, datus.**

The **first** gives the stem of the **Present, Imperfect, and Future** tenses: **AMō, Dō**. The **second** gives the **Present Infinitive**, by which the conjugation is distinguished: **amĀRE, dARE**. The **third** gives the stem of the **Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Active**: **AMĀVī, DEDī**. The **fourth** gives the stem of the **Perfect, Pluperfect and Future Perfect Passive**: **AMĀTus, DATus**.

**84.** Look in a vocabulary as seldom as possible.

First translate the Latin as nearly in the order in which it comes as you can, giving to each word the meaning its ending requires. Hints for Reading. Do not try to make good English, but only to get the sense and to find the construction of each Latin word. Then go over the sentence

again, and turn it into good English. This is especially necessary in a long sentence.

## 85.

1. Amīce, esne aeger?

2. Cōpia māgna frūmentī dēfessis equīs fuerat in agrō.

3. Cum studiō oppūgnātī sumus.

4. In hiberna tribūnī arma et frūmentum multum ā captivīs portāta erant. Barbarī virī pūgnīs multis hiberna oppūgnāvērunt. Portās hibernōrum cum studiō barbarī virī oppūgnāvērunt, et multōs amicōs tribūnī tēlis vulnerāvērunt. Multōs virōs tribūnus paucīs cum amicīs in pūgnā vulnerāvit.

5. Paucī virī cum māgnō studiō labōrant. Barbarī virī nōn labōrant. Bonus vir cum cōnsiliō et studiō labōrat. Labōrābisne, puer?

6. Cum māgnō studiō populī barbarī terram lēgātus occupāvit. Māgnō cum studiō oppida oppūgnābat. Māgnīs pūgnīs paucae terrae occupātae sunt. Māgnae pūgnae erant, et virī multi tēlis vulnerātī sunt, sed pauca oppida oppūgnāta sunt.

7. Māgnō cum cōnsiliō ā Rōmānīs in bellō oppida oppūgnābantur. Multis pūgnīs in Galliā ā Rōmānīs oppida occupāta sunt. Oppida multa in Galliā oppūgnābantur. Cum barbarīs viris pūgnīs multis Caesar pūgnābit.

8. Terrae novae ā viris barbarīs in bellō māgnō cum studiō occupātae erant. Māgnō cum studiō populī barbarī terram occupābunt.

## 86.

## WORD-LIST.

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to  
take possession of, to seize.

oppūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to  
attack.

pūgna, -ae, a fight.

labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to  
work. Sometimes to have  
a hard time.

barbarus, -a, -um, uncivilized.  
studium, -ī, eagerness.

## 87. (See 72.)

1. In the woods, in a wide<sup>1</sup> place<sup>2</sup> upon the road, the messenger was attacked. A man wounded (his) horse with a javelin. The messenger fought with the men with (his) sword. But the men were many, and he was tired out by the fight. He told the men (81, n. 1), "I am the messenger of the tribune Sextius; why<sup>3</sup> are you attacking me<sup>4</sup>? Are you not (his<sup>5</sup>) friends?" They told the messenger, "We are the friends of Sextius. We will be your<sup>6</sup> friends."

2. The winter camp of the legate was in the forest. In the winter camp there (66, n. 2) were a great number of captives, and much grain, and many weapons and horses. A large number of Gauls attacked the troops of the legate. In the battle he was wounded with a sword by a man. The Gauls seized the winter camp and carried the grain and weapons into the forest.

<sup>1</sup> lātus, -a, -um.<sup>4</sup> mē.<sup>2</sup> locus.<sup>5</sup> ēius.<sup>3</sup> cūr.<sup>6</sup> tuus, -a, -um.

## LESSON XIV.

### THE ABLATIVE OF MANNER

88.

EXAMPLES.

**Oppidum cum studiō oppūgnāvit**, *He attacked the town with eagerness (or eagerly).*

**Oppidum māgnō cum studiō oppūgnāvit**,

**Oppidum māgnō studiō oppūgnāvit**,

**Ablative of Manner.**

*He attacked the town with great eagerness.*

**Cum studiō, māgnō cum studiō, and māgnō studiō** express the **manner** of the action.

**89. RULE.**—The **manner** of an action is expressed by the **ablative** with **cum**, unless an **adjective** is used with the **ablative**, when **cum** may be **omitted**.

RŌMĀNĪ ATQUE GALLĪ.

**90.** To aid the pupil to acquire the habit of noticing the **endings**, they are in this lesson printed in **heavy faced type**.

Rōma fuit māgnūm oppidūm Ītaliae, cum altīs et longīs mūrīs. Altae portae erant mūrīs. Frūmentū in oppidūm Rōmam equīs ā virīs portābātur, nam multus in oppidō erat populus. Populus Rōmānus multās terrās oppidaque māgna cum cōsiliō et studiō in bellō occupāvit. Multī Rōmānī nōn labōrābant, sed captivī labōrābant. Māgnus erat captivōrum numerus.

Gallī erant barbarī virī quī (106) agrōs Galliae terrae silvāsque occupāverant. Olim bonam terram Ītaliā occupāre temptāverunt. Oppida oppūgnāvērunt. Rōmānī cum Gallīs pūgnāvērunt, sed tandem superātī sunt, nam multī



erant Gallī. Populus Rōmānus fugā servātus est. Sed Gallī celeriter ex-ivērunt, atque Rōmānī iterum oppidum Rōmam aedificāvērunt.

## 91.

## WORD LIST.

mūrus, -ī, *wall*.

atque, *and*.

bonus, -a, -um, *good*.

-que, *and*. (8, 4.)

## 92.

In the land (of) Italy are great supplies of grain. The Roman people are skilful<sup>1</sup> in war. The cities have high walls. But we Gauls are many and will eagerly attack the forces of the Romans. The Romans will fight with eagerness, but we will seize many towns. We will seize the city Rome. We will carry many captives and weapons and much grain into the country (of) Gaul. This<sup>2</sup> (72, N. 3) plan is acceptable to the men in the council of the Gauls.

<sup>1</sup> Cum cōnsiliō

<sup>2</sup> Hōc.

## LESSON XV.

93.

### HIC AND ILLE.

**hīc**, *this*.

**ille**, *that*.

#### SINGULAR.

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	hīc	haec	hōc	ille	illa	illud
GEN.	hūius	hūius	hūius	illius	illius	illius
DAT.	huic	huic	huic	illi	illi	illi
ACC.	hunc	hanc	hōc	illum	illam	illud
ABL.	hōc	hāc	hōc	illō	illā	illō

#### PLURAL.

NOM.	hī	hae	haec	illī	illae	illa
GEN.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
DAT.	hīs	hīs	hīs	illis	illis	illis
ACC.	hōs	hās	haec	illōs	illās	illa
ABL.	hīs	hīs	hīs	illis	illis	illis

a. How do these forms differ from those of nouns of the first and second declensions?

b. **Hīc** refers to what is **near** to the **speaker** in place, time, or thought: **hīc gladius**, *this sword*.

c. **Ille** refers to what is **somewhat remote** from the **speaker** in place, time, or thought: **illud tēlum**, *that dart*.

d. **Ille**, agreeing with a noun sometimes means “*that well-known*,” or “*that renowned*.”

94.

#### EXAMPLES.

**Hīc puer est altus; illa puella est parva**, *This boy is tall; that girl is small.*

Lēgātus et captīvus sunt amīcī; ille est Rōmānus, hīc Gallus, *The lieutenant and the captive are friends; the former is a Roman, the latter a Gaul.*

Hōc dōnum puellae est grātum, illud puerō, *This gift is pleasing to the girl, that one to the boy.*

a. Notice the meaning of **ille, hīc**: “*the former,*” “*the latter,*” in the second sentence.

b. An examination of the above shows that **hīc** and **ille** have two uses: (1) as **demonstrative adjectives**, in agreement with nouns, (2) as **demonstrative pronouns**, standing alone.

## 95.

1. Lēgātō studium illius tribūnī atque hūius nūntī grātum fuit.

2. Hīc mūrus paucās portās, ille multās, habet.

3. Illius Galbae gladium portābō.

4. Aeduī et Sēquanī in terrā Galliā diū erant. Illi fuērunt Rōmānōrum amīcī, hī Germānōrum. Suntne illī nostrī amīcī?

5. Secundā pūgnā barbarōs superat, et ibi hiberna **conlocābit**. Ubi hiberna **conlocābit**? nam nōn **idōneus locus** est. Estne **idōneus** ille **locus**? In illō **idōneō locō** hiberna lēgātus **conlocābit**. In hōc **locō** tribūnus multa tēla, sed paucōs gladiōs, habet. In hīs hibernīs amīcī lēgātī frumentum atque arma cum studiō **conlocāverint**.

6. Nōne tribūnus huic **filiō** Mārci dēfessō grātum dōnum dabit? nam cum studiō labōrat. Illi hunc gladium, huic illud tēlum dabit. In hōc **locō** ā **filiō** tribūnī lēgātus gladiō vulnerātus erit.

## 96.

## WORD-LIST.

**locus, -ī**, plural, **locī** or **loca**, **idōneus, -a, -um**, *suitable*.

*a place.*

(Refers to place. For time,

**conlocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**,

*to place or station.*

**secundus, -a, -um**, *favorable*, is usually used.)

**filius, -ī**, *son*.

## 97.

1. The friends of this man are many, but of that (one), few.
2. These men do not fight with eagerness, but those are wounding many Romans with their swords.
3. This legate has a sword, and that (legate) a javelin.
4. A Gaul gave this tired captive a horse.
5. This place is not a suitable (one.)
6. The advice of this lieutenant will not be pleasing to the legates in the council.

## 98.

1. Cōnsilium nūntī in illō conciliō nūntiātur. Cōnsilium nōn tribūnī sed nūntī lēgātō grātum erit.
2. Caesar cum Helvētiis in illō **idōneō locō** pūgnāvit. Pūgna māgna fuit sed Rōmānī Helvētiōs superāvērunt.
3. Frūmentum populō nōn fuerat.
4. Hī gladii novī illis virīs grāti erunt.
5. Vir in mūrō tēlum pōrtat. Puerō tēlum dabit.
6. **Filiō idōneum** tēlum dat.
7. Tribūne, ā populō amāberis.
8. Lēgātus populī nōn fueram.
9. Frūmentum in hiberna portābit, sed arma in oppidō **conlocābit**. Hōc cōnsilium lēgātō novō nōn grātum est. In oppidō hiberna **conlocābit**.

## 99.

This boy is carrying a large sword. With the boy there are many children. He is telling the children (81, n. 1), "In yonder<sup>1</sup> woods there are many Gauls. I will fight with these men and will wound a large number with this sword. Messengers will tell this to the Roman legate. He will give (me) a horse and javelin. Then<sup>2</sup> I will be a lieutenant. Is not this a good plan?"

<sup>1</sup> ille.<sup>2</sup> tum.

## LESSON XVI.

### 100. THE DEMONSTRATIVE IS.

*is, this, that; also he, she, it.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	is	ea	id	eī, iī	eae	ea
GEN	ēius	ēius	ēius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
DAT.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
ACC.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
ABL.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

*a.* **Is** as a pronoun means *he, she, it*. As a demonstrative adjective it is an **unemphatic** *this* or *that* in meaning, standing between **hīc** and **ille**, but somewhat nearer to the latter.

### 101. TABLE OF USUAL MEANINGS.

<b>is, he.</b>	<b>ea, she.</b>	<b>id, it;</b>
<i>also this, that.</i>		
<b>ēius,</b>		
<i>his, her, its.</i>		
<b>eōrum, eārum, eōrum,</b>		
<i>their,</i>		
<b>eum, him.</b>	<b>eam, her.</b>	<b>id, it;</b>
<i>also this, that.</i>		

### 102. EXAMPLES.

**Is vir cum studiō labōrat,** *This man labors with eagerness.*  
**Studium ēius virī laudāmus,** *We praise the eagerness of that man.*

**Amicus eius amātur, His friend is liked.**

**103.**

1. Ei filiae Mārci dōna **dedistis**, atque grāta fuērunt haec dōna.

2. Ei cum studiō auxilium **dabunt**.

3. Lēgātus in idōneō locō hiberna conlocāverit. In hiberna equis multa tēla et māgnam cōpiam frūmenti portābit. Gallī haec hiberna oppūgnābunt, sed nōn occupābunt.

4. Nōne pūgnae **sīgnum dabis**?

II. CAESAR ET ARIOVISTUS.

Ariovistus erat Germānus. Gallōs facile **superāverat**. Caesar atque Rōmānī gladiis tēlisque cum Ariovistō pūgnāvērunt, eumque in bellō **superāvērunt**. Māgna erat haec pūgna. Māgnū studium pūgnae erat Ariovistō. Multōs virōs atque equōs habuit et Gallōs multis pūgnis **superāverat**. Caesar castra cum vāllō portisque in locō idōneō prope eum conlocāvit, et in haec castra impedīmenta portāvit. Germānōrum castra vāllum nōn habuērunt, nam barbarī erant. In pūgnā Germānis māgnū fuit studium, sed Rōmānis cōnsilium atque bona arma fuērunt. Deinde Rōmānī **superāvērunt**. In fugā per silvās multī Germāni, virī, mulierēs, etiam lib̄i, inter ecti sunt. Ariovistus ipse in Germāniam fūgit. Ita Germānī ā Rōmānis **superātī sunt**.

**104**

WORD-LIST.

sīgnum, -ī, <i>standard or en-</i>	superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,
<i>sign, signal.</i>	<i>to surpass; hence, some-</i>
ĉdō, dare, dedī, datum, <i>to</i>	<i>times, to conquer.</i>
<i>give.</i>	ita, adv., <i>thus, in this way.</i>

**105.** (See 72 and 129.)

The lieutenant will give the signal for battle and the men will attack the Gauls with great eagerness.

There are a few Gauls in the road, and a great number in the woods. A few Romans will attack the former with javelins, but the latter will be attacked with swords. In a suitable place in the woods the Gauls have placed (their) children and baggage. The Romans who<sup>1</sup> will fight in the road will easily overcome the Gauls there. Then<sup>2</sup> they will easily seize the baggage of the Gauls. Next<sup>3</sup> they will give help to (their) friends, who<sup>1</sup> will attack those Gauls who are in the woods. Thus the Gauls will easily be conquered.

This is the plan of the lieutenant.

<sup>1</sup> qui.

<sup>2</sup> tum.

<sup>3</sup> deinde.

## LESSON XVII.

106.

QUI.

*quī, who, which.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	cūī	cūī	cūī	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

*a.* **Quī** is called the **Relative Pronoun.**

**The Relative  
Pronoun.**

107. TABLE OF USUAL MEANINGS IN SINGULAR.

*quī, quae, who.      quod, which, that.*

**cūius,**

*of whom, whose, of which.*

*cūī, to or for whom.*

*cūī, to or for which.*

*quem, quam, whom.*

*quod, which, that.*

108.

EXAMPLES.

**Ubi est puer quī temptāvit?** *Where is the boy who tried?*  
**Cōpiae quās habet sunt māgnae,** *The supplies which he  
has are large.*

**Puer cūī dōnum dat est parvus,** *The boy to whom he gives  
the gift is small.*



**Cōnsilium quod dat est bonum,** *The advice which he gives is good.* Agreement of Relative Pronoun.

a. Notice that the relative pronouns in these sentences have the **same gender** and **number** as the nouns to which they refer (called their **antecedents**): **quī** as **puer**, **quās** as **cōpiae**, **cūī** as **puer**, **quod** as **cōnsilium**. But the **cases** are often **different**. **Quī** is the subject of **est**, **quās** the direct object of **habēt**, **cūī** the indirect object of **dat**, and **quod** the direct object of **dat**.

**109. RULE.**—A **relative pronoun** agrees with its **antecedent** in **gender** and **number**, but its **case** depends upon the **construction of the clause** in which it stands.

**110.**

1. Vir bonus, cūius filius in hōc agrō labōrat, est in **castrīs**.
2. Numerus equōrum, quī in **castra** impedimenta portabunt, est magnus. In **castrīs** sunt multa signa.
3. Virī, quibus erant gladiī, paucī erant.
4. Cōnsilium nūntī populō nōn erit grātum.
5. Illī equī, quibus Mārci filius in viā frūmentum portat, sunt nigri. Dēfessus est filius Mārci, quī in **castra** frūmentum portat. Aeger est vir, cūius equī in viā sunt.
6. Nōn grāta filiae Galbae sunt dōna quae puer dat. Aeger est puer, qui haec dōna filiae dabat.
7. Tribūnus est hīc vir, cūī multa arma sunt, sed ā barbaris captivīs, quōs hī equī portābant, vulnerātus est.

**111.****WORD-LIST.**

**castra, -ōrum** (in plural only), *camp.*

**112.** (See 129.)

1. The man whom you wounded is a messenger.
2. The men to whom you gave the swords which were on the wall are Gauls.

3. This is the lieutenant whose baggage was seized.
4. This is the boy to whom you gave the gift.
5. These children wounded the son of Marcus with this javelin, which you gave to (your) friend.
6. This man to whom you gave the long sword is not (your) friend.
7. The tired captive to whom you gave the horse is not a Gaul.
8. The weapons which you gave to the men are in the camp.

## LESSON XVIII.

113.

QUIS.

*quis, who? which? what?*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM. quis	quae	quid	quī	quae	quae
GEN. cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT. cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC. quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae
ABL. quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

114.

EXAMPLES.

*Quis castra oppugnābit? Who will attack the camp?*

*Quis erit nūntius? Who will be a messenger?*

*Quid amant Gallī? What do the Gauls love?*

*Quae oppida ā Rōmānīs occupāta sunt?*

*What towns have been seized by the Romans?*

*a.* Notice that **quis** in the first sentence and **quid** in the third are **interrogative pronouns**, while **quis** in the second sentence and **quae** in the fourth are **interrogative adjectives**, and agree with their nouns like other adjectives.

*b.* **Quī** is used instead of **quis** and **quod** instead of **quid** as interrogative adjectives:

**Quod oppidum ā Rōmānīs occupātum est?**

115.

1. *Ā quibus haec castra oppugnābuntur?*

2. *Quī virī hanc terram occupāverint?*

3. Quid est in illō mūrō?
4. Quī vir nōn amat puerōs?
5. Cui dabit tribūnus hōc **novum** gladium?
6. Quibus virīs nōn erit **auxilium** amicōrum grātum?
7. Quōs agiōs habet ille vir?
8. Quem vulnerāvistī?
9. Quid est lēgātō in hibernīs?
10. Quam portam tribūnus oppugnābit?
11. Ā quō arma illa ibi sunt conlocāta?
12. Quibus **novīs** armīs illum virum lēgātus vulnerāvit?
13. Ā quibus Rōmānī superātī sunt?
14. Cūius arma ille puer habet?
15. In quō locō lēgātus **impedīmenta** conlocābit? In **novīs** hibernīs **impedīmenta** conlocat.
16. Quī bonus vir **auxilium** amicīs nōn dat?
17. Quōs virōs **auxiliō** filiōrum tribūnus vulnerāvit?
18. Cūius tribūnī in hibernīs sunt **impedīmenta**? In oppidum equīs **impedīmenta** portābuntur.
19. Quod **novum** cōnsilium nūntius dabit?

## 116.

## WORD-LIST.

**novus, -a, -um, new.** Hence **impedimentum, -ī, a hindrance.** In plural, the also, *strange.* *baggage or baggage train of an army.*

**auxilium, -ī, aid or help.** Plural usually *auxiliaries, light armed troops (slingers, bowmen, spearmen, etc.)*

## 117.

1. Upon what road were these wearied men attacked by the forces of the Gauls? With what arms did the Gauls fight? Whom did they wound with the javelins? Whose horse was wounded in the fight?

2. By whom will this be told to the men in the council? Will the gate of the winter camp be at-

tacked by the Gauls? Is the winter camp located in a suitable place?

3. Is that tall man the lieutenant? Why<sup>1</sup> is he loved by the men? The men are few, but they will fight very eagerly (with great eagerness).

4. What towns of the Gauls will they attack?

5. What is this man carrying?

6. With whose sword was that man wounded?

7. To whom will you give advice?

8. In what place shall we place the camp?

<sup>1</sup> cūr.

## LESSON XIX.

### READING LESSON.

#### 118.

#### PUER ET AMĪCUS.

Puer quī in agrō erat amicō ita dixit, “Quibus sunt illi equī quī in hōc agrō erant?”

“Equī sunt eōrum Rōmānōrum quī in silvā cum Gallis pūgnābant.” Ita amīcus dixit.

“Cūr illi quī cum Gallis pūgnāvērunt ex equis in silvam nōn ivērunt?”

“Olim ita ivērunt, sed Galli facile equōs vulnerābant, atque Rōmānī multi superātī sunt. Facile in agrō ex equis pūgnant, sed in silvis nōn ita est.”

“Illud sīgnum quid est?”

“Sīgnum in illis castris ā tribūnō datur. Nōn pūgnae sīgnum dat, nam prope Galli nōn sunt.”

“Vidē! Multī virī in portā mūrisque castrōrum sunt. Id sīgnum aliud, nōnne in silvā datur?”

“Ā Gallis id datur. Prope Galli sunt. Fuge!”

Sed puerī amīcus ā Gallis interfectus est, atque puer ipse vulnerātus est.

#### 119.

Ariovistus was a German who greatly enjoyed a fight.<sup>1</sup> He seized the fields of the Sequani, who were Gauls, and conquered the Haedui in a great battle. The Haedui, who were friends of the Roman people,

<sup>1</sup> Compare 103, II.

told them,<sup>1</sup> "The Germans, who have conquered the Gauls, are seizing the land of Gaul. Are the Germans friends of the Roman people?" The Romans sent word<sup>2</sup> to Ariovistus, "We are the friends of the Haedui." This was not pleasing to Ariovistus. He sent word to the Romans, "Will you fight the Germans? They have never<sup>3</sup> been conquered." But Caesar with his forces attacked the Germans and conquered Ariovistus.

<sup>1</sup> Singular.

<sup>2</sup> nūntiāre.

<sup>3</sup> numquam.



ACIĒS RŌMĀNA BARBARŌS OPPŪGNAT.

(From a column at Rome, of the second century after Christ.)

Notice the *aciēs*, composed of *mīlitēs*, with *sagittārii* and other *auxilia* at the ends.

## LESSON XX.

### 120. THE DEMONSTRATIVES ISTE, IDEM, IPSE.

*idem, the same.*

#### SINGULAR.

	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	idem	eadem	idem
GEN.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem
DAT.	eidem	eidem	eidem
ACC.	eundem	eandem	idem
ABL.	eodem	eadem	eodem

#### PLURAL.

NOM.	{ eidem iidem	eaedem	eadem
GEN.	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
DAT.	{ eisdem iisdem	eisdem iisdem	eisdem iisdem
ACC.	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
ABL.	{ eisdem iisdem	eisdem iisdem	eisdem iisdem

*ipse, self.*

#### SINGULAR.

#### PLURAL.

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
GEN.	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
DAT.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
ACC.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
ABL.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

*Iste, ista, istud, that, that of yours.*

**Iste** is declined like **ille**. (93.)



## 121.

## EXAMPLES.

Hic idem vir eum vulnerāvit, *This same man wounded him.*

Lēgātus ipse eum vulnerāvit, *The legate himself wounded him.*

Ipsē virum vulnerāvisti, *You wounded the man yourself.*

Istum gladium eī dedī, *I gave him that sword of yours.*

a. **Idem** and **iste** can be used as either **demonstrative adjectives** or **demonstrative pronouns**. (Cp. 94, b.)

b. **Iste** is used in speaking of that which has some **relation** to the **person addressed**. It sometimes denotes contempt.

Do "of yours," "of his," sometimes suggest contempt in English?

c. **Ipse**, strictly speaking, like the English "*self*," is not used alone, but in agreement with a **noun** or **pronoun**. Sometimes the noun or pronoun is understood from the verb ending, as in the third sentence.

## 122.

1. Quae nova arma barbari viri habent?
2. In quod oppidum sunt impedimenta portata?
3. Quis bello Gallōs superavit?
4. Ad eandem portam properaverunt.
5. Hic est iste gladius quō ipse vulneratus es.
6. Telum atque equus sunt dona eiusdem viri. Isti puero haec dona ipse dedit.
7. Tribūnus ipse legatum ipsum vulneravit.
8. Cui legatō grata erat nuntiorum fuga?
9. In quā terrā sunt silvae?
10. In agris cum studiō laborabit.
11. Eadem castra cum copiis legati occupaverunt.
12. In concilio ipso Gallōrum ille hoc consilium legatis ipsis nuntiavit.
13. In bello quod auxilium a tribūnis legatō datur? Gratū auxilium gladiis in pugna tribūni legatō dant.

**123.**

1. To whom does that sword belong ?
2. Are these the sons of the same man ?
3. You yourself gave the signal of battle, and with a few men attacked the tribune himself.
4. These Gauls attacked the gate<sup>1</sup> of the camp itself.
5. That captive of yours is not at work.
6. The legates placed the camps in the same place.
7. The messenger himself, the friend of the tribune, was wounded by the latter's captive.
8. What weapons do the men have ?

<sup>1</sup> porta.

## LESSON XXI.

### 124. THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

**quīdam**, *a, a certain (person or thing).*

#### SINGULAR.

	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam, quoddam
GEN.	cūiusdam	cūiusdam	cūiusdam
DAT.	cuīdam	cuīdam	cuīdam
ACC.	quendam	quandam	quiddam, quoddam
ABL.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

#### PLURAL.

NOM.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
GEN.	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
DAT.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
ACC.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
ABL.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

**aliquis**, *some, any (person or thing).*

#### SINGULAR.

	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	aliquis	aliqua	aliquid, aliquod
GEN.	alicūius	alicūius	alicūius
DAT.	alicuī	alicuī	alicuī
ACC.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid, aliquod
ABL.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

#### PLURAL.

NOM.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
GEN.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
DAT.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
ACC.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
ABL.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

a. Is the **quis** of this compound declined differently from the interrogative **quis** ?

b. **Aliquid** is used as a noun, **aliquid** as an adjective.

**125.** I. The following adjectives, like the pronouns, end in **-ius** in the genitive singular of all genders, and in **-ī** in the dative:

<b>alius, alia, aliud, another.</b>	<b>tōtus, -a, -um, whole.</b>
<b>nūllus, -a, -um, no one,</b>	<b>ūllus, -a, -um, any.</b>
<i>none, no.</i>	<b>ūnus, -a, -um, one, alone.</b>
<b>sōlus, -a, -um, alone, sole.</b>	

**alter, altera, alterum, the other of two.**

**neuter, neutra, neutrum, neither of two.**

**uter, utra, utrum, which of two ?**

**uterque, utraque, utrumque, each of two, both.**

## II. DECLENSION.

### SINGULAR.

	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	<b>alius</b>	<b>alia</b>	<b>aliud</b>
GEN.	<b>aliūs</b>	<b>aliūs</b>	<b>aliūs</b>
DAT.	<b>aliī</b>	<b>aliī</b>	<b>aliī</b>
ACC.	<b>aliūm</b>	<b>aliām</b>	<b>aliud</b>
ABL.	<b>aliō</b>	<b>aliā</b>	<b>aliō</b>
VOC.	<b>(alius)</b>	<b>alia</b>	<b>aliud)</b>

The plural is regular. (474.)

### **126.** TABLE OF MEANINGS.

**alius . . . alius, one, . . . another.**

**alius . . . aliud, one one thing . . . another another.**

**alter . . . alter, the one, the other.**

**Alius aliud portat, One carries one (thing), another (carries) another.**

**127.** 1. Multi erant nuntii, atque eorum alius aliud nuntiabat.

2. Alii ad portam castrorum, alii ad impedimenta, properaverunt.

3. Neutra hiberna in loco idoneo a legatis conlocata sunt.

4. Alii telum, alii gladium dabis.

5. Alteri hic equus, alteri ille datus est.

6. Si ab utroque legato oppidum occupatum erit, neutri oppidi populus frumentum dabit.

7. Multi consilia Galbae legato nuntiabant, sed consilium istius nunti solius fuit gratum. Nulli consilia bona alii nuntii nuntiaverunt.

8. Toti concilio hoc consilium est gratum, sed illud nullis.

9. Alia hiberna in aliis locis Caesar habet, sed in his solis sunt magnae copiae.

10. Aliquis tribunus his viris quosdam captivos dedit.

11. Cum meum gladium dedisti? Cuidam puero dedi.

## 128.

1. Some attacked the gate,<sup>1</sup> others the wall.

2. Some messengers announce one (thing), others another. (Express in four words.)

3. Certain (men) seized all the grain in the city.

4. To neither of these children has any one given any gift. (94, sentence 3.)

5. One attacked the camp, the other the town. Both were wounded.

6. He gave javelins to many men, but he gave a sword to one man only.

7. Some men attacked the winter camp in one place, some in another.

<sup>1</sup> porta.

## 129.

## WORD-LIST FOR REVIEW.

cōpia	auxilium	amō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus	
pūgna	bellum	conlocō “ “ “	
silva	concilium	labōrō “ “ “	
terra	cōnsilium	nūntiō “ “ “	
via	frūmentum	occupō “ “ “	
	impedimentum	oppūgnō “ “ “	
amicus	oppidum	portō “ “ “	
captivus	sīgnum	pūgnō “ “ “	
equus	studium	superō “ “ “	
fīlius	tēlum	vulnerō “ “ “	
gladius			
légātus	altus, -a, -um	dō, dare, dedi, datus	
locus	barbarus, -a, -um		
mūrus	bonus, -a, -um	-ne	
numerus	dēfessus, -a, -um	et, atque, -que	
nūntius	grātus, -a, -um	in	
populus	idōneus, -a, -um	ā, ab	
tribūnus	liber, -a, -um	cum	
	longus, -a, -um	nōn	
ager	māgnus, -a, -um	ibi	arma
vir	multus, -a, -um	sed	castra
	novus, -a, -um		hīberna
	paucī -ae, -a		

Mark the words whose meanings you do not recollect, and pay especial attention to them.

## LESSON XXII.

### THIRD DECLENSION.

**130.** The stem ends in a consonant (either a mute or a liquid (2)) or in *i*.

#### MUTE STEMS.

<b>Prīnceps</b> , M., <i>chief.</i> Stem <b>prīncip-</b>	<b>Facultās</b> , F., <i>resources.</i> St. <b>facultāt-</b>	<b>Dux</b> , M., <i>leader.</i> St. <b>duc-</b> (2, 3)	<b>Caput</b> , N., <i>head.</i> St. <b>capit-</b>
--	--	--	---

#### SINGULAR.

NOM. <b>prīnceps</b>	facultās	dux	caput
GEN. <b>prīncipis</b>	facultātis	ducis	capitis
DAT. <b>prīncipī</b>	facultātī	ducī	capitī
ACC. <b>prīncipem</b>	facultātem	ducem	caput
ABL. <b>prīncipe</b>	facultāte	duce	capite
VOC. ( <b>prīnceps</b> )	(facultās)	(dux)	(caput)

#### PLURAL.

NOM. <b>prīncipēs</b>	facultātēs	ducēs	capita
GEN. <b>prīncipum</b>	facultātum	ducum	capitum
DAT. <b>prīncipibus</b>	facultātibus	ducibus	capitibus
ACC. <b>prīncipēs</b>	facultātēs	ducēs	capita
ABL. <b>prīncipibus</b>	facultātibus	ducibus	capitibus
VOC. ( <b>prīncipēs</b> )	(facultātēs)	(ducēs)	(capita)

*a.* To find the stem, drop the ending of the genitive singular.

*b.* Observe that the last vowel in the stem is sometimes changed in forming the nominative. No rule can be given for this change.

c. Notice that **neuters** have the **accusative** and **nominative alike**. Is this true of neuter nouns in the second declension?

d. Decline also **rēx, rēgis, m., king**; **lapis, lapidis, m., stone**; **eques, equitis, m., horseman**; **comes, comitis, m., companion**; **pāx, pācis, f., peace**.

e. Decline together **ille p̄ncēps, mīles bonus, id caput**.

**131.**

## ALLIED WORDS.

Some of the words in the following list have come directly from Latin words. Some come from the Latin through the French in the lists given later.

As far as possible analyze the English word, removing prefixes or endings and noting their meanings. Then find the allied Latin word, which should be one of those already memorized. Then give the meaning, (1) of the Latin word, (2) of the English word.

Agriculture	Bellicose	Territory	Unpopular
Amicable	Multiform	Studious	

**132.**

## LICINIUS ATQUE CLAUDIUS.

Olim Licinius, quī māgnus erat **p̄ncēps**, oppidum oppugnabat. Multi **mīlitēs, peditēs equitēs**que, eī erant. In eō oppidō fuit Claudius, rēx, cum populō,—viris, mulieribus, liberisque. Diū hōc oppidum, in quō Claudius fuit rēx, ille **p̄ncēps** cum **mīlitibus** occupāre **temptābat**, nam in eō fuit māgna praeda, et arma et frūmentum. Sed cum virtūte **mīlitēs** oppidī prō mulieribus liberisque pugnabant. Portam oppidī māgnō studiō **peditibus** Licinius occupāre **temptāvit**. In mūrō tēlis rēx atque **mīlitēs** oppidī pugnāvērunt. Deinde signum datum est atque subitō eōs **peditēs p̄ncipis** Licinī quī ad portam pugnabant **mīlitēs** Claudī superāre **temptāvērunt**. Multōs **mīlitēs** vulnerāvērunt, atque paucī interfectī sunt. Multi **peditēs** Licinī, dēfessī, superābantur. Id **p̄ncipī equitum** nūntiātum est, atque cum



**equitibus** auxilium Liciniō dedit. Diū fortiter cum Claudiō pugnābant. Licinī equus niger vulnerātus est, sed ā **prīncipe equitum** alius equus eī datus est. Claudium rēgem Licinius **prīnceps** vidit, et eum tēlō vulnerāre **temptāvit**. Claudius gladiō caput Licinī vulnerāvit. Tum victōria erat rēgī, nam Licinī **militēs** fugā sē servāre **temptāvērunt**. Licinius ipse paucis **equitibus** in silvā portātus est, et ita servātus est.

## 133.

## WORD-LIST.

<b>mīles</b> , <b>mīlitis</b> , m., <i>soldier</i> .	<b>prīnceps</b> , <b>prīncipis</b> , m., <i>a leader, chief</i> .
<b>eques</b> , <b>equitis</b> , m., <i>horse-man</i> .	<b>temptō</b> , <b>-āre</b> , <b>-āvi</b> , <b>-ātus</b> , <i>to try</i> .
<b>pedes</b> , <b>peditis</b> , m., <i>foot-soldier</i> .	

## 134.

Then (99, N. 2) Claudius, rejoicing,<sup>1</sup> with a few horsemen hastily<sup>2</sup> tried to seize the baggage of the soldiers of Licinius. But at the place where<sup>3</sup> the baggage had been placed there were a few foot-soldiers of Licinius. Their leader saw Claudius and said to the soldiers, "That man is a chief, for he has a good horse and good weapons. I will give many gifts to the man who will attack and wound him." He gave the signal of battle. They eagerly attacked Claudius and his horsemen.

<sup>1</sup> laetus, -a, -um.<sup>2</sup> celeriter.<sup>3</sup> ubi.

## LESSON XXIII.

### THIRD DECLENSION.

**135.**

MUTE STEMS.—*Continued.*

<b>mīles</b> , m., <i>soldier</i> .	<b>virtūs</b> , f., <i>manliness.</i>	<b>pēs</b> , m., <i>foot</i> .
Stem <b>milit-</b>	St. <b>virtūt-</b>	St. <b>ped-</b>

#### SINGULAR.

NOM. <b>mīles</b>	virtūs	pēs
GEN. <b>militis</b>	virtūtis	pedis
DAT. <b>militī</b>	virtūtī	pedī
ACC. <b>militem</b>	virtūtem	pedem
ABL. <b>milite</b>	virtūte	pede
VOC. ( <b>mīles</b> )	(virtūs)	(pēs)

#### PLURAL.

NOM. <b>militēs</b>	virtūtēs	pedēs
GEN. <b>militum</b>	virtūtum	pedum
DAT. <b>militibus</b>	virtūtibus	pedibus
ACC. <b>militēs</b>	virtūtēs	pedēs
ABL. <b>militibus</b>	virtūtibus	pedibus
VOC. ( <b>militēs</b> )	(virtūtēs)	(pedēs)

*a.* Decline also **obses**, **obsidis**, m., *hostage*; **pedes**, **peditis**, m., *foot-soldier*; **grex**, **gregis**, m., *flock, herd*; **cīvitās**, **cīvitātis**, f., *state (body of citizens)*.

*b.* Decline together **pēs dēfessus**; **ille obses**; **haec virtūs**.

## 136.

## EXAMPLES.

**Homō studiō laudātur,** *The man is praised on account of (because of) his eagerness.*

**Eques ā rēge virtūte laudābitur,** *The horseman will be praised by the king for his bravery.*

**Miles longō itinere est dēfessus,** *The soldier is tired with the long march.*

a. Notice that the **ablatives** **studiō, virtūte, itinere,** denote the **cause**.

b. Notice the number of expressions the English has to denote cause. Are there other expressions besides the three given here?

**137. RULE. Cause** may be expressed by the **ablative**.

a. **By what? Why? How? By whom?**

Can the **ablative** case answer all of these questions?

## 138.

## ALLIED WORDS.

Copious	Magnify	Novel	Paucity
Liberate	Multiple	Occupation	

## 139.

1. Quis illi militi **virtūte** gladium dabit? Gladius ei **virtūte** ab hōc p̄ncipe dabātur.

2. Princeps **virtūte** et m̄agnā **fortūnā** quem vulnerābat? Equitem vulnerāvit, cūius equus frūmenti **inopiā** labōrābat.

3. Eis amicis Mārci quī m̄agnā **virtūte** pūgnant **inopia** frūmenti est.

4. Princeps bonā **fortūnā** pūgnāvit, nam **virtūte** rēgem superāvit.

5. Militēs quī erant in hāc **parte** mūri **inopiā** gladiōrum celeriter interfecti sunt.

6. In idōneō locō m̄agnam **partem** impedimentōrum conlocāverit.

7. Equi **pedem** vulnerāre temptābō.

8. Bonā **fortūnā** gladiō eius nōn vulnerābātur.

9. **Inopiā** equōrum in his hibernis māgnam **partem** impedimentōrum conlocāverat.

10. Equi longā viā erunt defessi atque **pedēs** lapidibus vulnerābuntur.

11. Māgnā **fortūnā** militēs qui hanc **partem** castrōrum oppugnābant nōn vulnerābantur.

12. **Parti** defessorum equitum frūmentum nōn erit.

13. Huic puerō nōn est bona **fortūna**.

14. **Virtūte** equitum hūius terrae māgnam **partem** occupāverās.

15. Equi frūmenti et aquae **inopiā** labōrant.

## 140.

## WORD-LIST.

**virtūs, virtūtis, f., manli-**  
*ness, bravery.*

**pēs, pedis, m., foot.**

**pars, partis, f., part, hence**  
*region, place, direction.*

Declined like *hostis*, 147.

**inopia, inopiae, lack.**

**fortūna, -ae, luck, chance,**  
sometimes *fate.*

141. LICINIUS AND CLAUDIUS.—*Concluded.*

The footmen attacked the horsemen of Claudius. They tried to wound the horses with their javelins; then <sup>1</sup> with their swords attacked the men whose horses had been wounded.

By a strange chance a javelin wounded both <sup>2</sup> the foot of Claudius and (his) horse. The horsemen tried to help him, but they were few, and many footmen eagerly attacked them. Thus they were overcome. Then (99, N. 2) the footmen assaulted Claudius. "Give up (your) sword, for <sup>3</sup> you are a captive." "Never," <sup>4</sup> said <sup>5</sup> Claudius, "will I, who have overcome Licinius, be the captive of his footmen." He fought with great bravery with his sword, but they attacked him with javelins. Thus he was killed. <sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *deinde.*

<sup>2</sup> See *et* in vocabulary.

<sup>3</sup> *nam.*

<sup>4</sup> *numquam.*

<sup>5</sup> *dixit.*

<sup>6</sup> *interfectus est.*

## LESSON XXIV.

### 142.            THIRD DECLENSION.

#### LIQUID STEMS.

<b>homō</b> , m., <i>man.</i>	<b>labor</b> , m., <i>labor.</i>	<b>pater</b> , m., <i>father.</i>	<b>exsul</b> , m. and f., <i>exile.</i>
Stem <b>homin-</b>	St. <b>labor-</b>	St. <b>patr-</b>	St. <b>exsul-</b>

#### SINGULAR.

NOM. homō	labor	pater	exsul
GEN. hominīs	labōris	patris	exsulīs
DAT. hominī	labōrī	patrī	exsulī
ACC. hominem	labōrem	patrem	exsulem
ABL. homine	labōre	patre	exsule
VOC. (homō)	(labōr)	(pater)	(exsul)

#### PLURAL.

NOM. hominēs	labōrēs	patrēs	exsulēs
GEN. hominum	labōrum	patrum	exsulum
DAT. hominibus	labōribus	patribus	exsulibus
ACC. hominēs	labōrēs	patrēs	exsulēs
ABL. hominibus	labōribus	patribus	exsulibus
VOC. (hominēs)	(labōrēs)	(patrēs)	(exsulēs)

**lītus**, n.,  
*coast.*

Stem **lītor-**

**opus**, n.,  
*work.*

Stem **oper-**

## SINGULAR.

NOM.	litus	opus
GEN.	litoris	operis
DAT.	litori	operi
ACC.	litus	opus
ABL.	litore	opere
VOC.	(litus)	(opus)

## PLURAL.

NOM.	litora	opera
GEN.	litorum	operum
DAT.	litoribus	operibus
ACC.	litora	opera
ABL.	litoribus	operibus
VOC.	(litora)	(opera)

a. What is the ending of the Nominative and Accusative neuter plural? What is the ending in these cases of the neuter nouns of the second declension?

b. Decline also **flūmen**, **flūminis**, n., *river*; **agmen**, **agminis**, n., *a marching body of troops*; **tempus**, **temporis**, n., *time*; **regiō**, **regiōnis**, f., *region*; **frāter**, **frātris**, m., *brother*.

## 143.

## ALLIED WORDS.

Hibernate	Portable	Temptation
Location	Principal	Virility
Impediment	Renovate	

## 144.

## MILES ET TRIBŪNUS.

Olim oppidum oppugnābātur. Aliquis miles cūius pēs vulnerātus erat ex pūgnā ab amicō portābātur. Eius caput lapis ex ballistā quae in mūrō oppidī erat abripuit, sed hōc amicus nōn vidit. Eī tribūnus dixit, “Cūr militem qui interfectus est portās?” “Nōn interfectus est,” amicus dixit. “Pēs eius vulnerātus est.” “Stultissime!” tribūnus respondit, “caput eī nōn est.” Tum amicus hōc vidit. “Tribūne,”

dixit, “vērūm nūntiās. Nōn stultus tamen sum, nam hic mīles ipse mihi nūntiāvit, ‘Meum pedem tēlum vulnerāvit.’”

## HANNIBAL ET SCĪPIŌ.—I.

Diū Carthāgō in Āfricā māgnūm oppidum erat, atque multās terrās secundīs bellis occupāverat. Rōma erat oppidum **ad flūmen** Tiberim atque multōs populōs Ītalīae Rōmānī superāverant. **Hominēs summō** studiō<sup>1</sup> bellī erant.

In primō bellō cum **hominibus** Carthāginis Rōmānī paene superātī sunt, sed **summō** studiō cōnsiliōque tandem victōria eis fuit. Pater Hannibalis, **homō summō** cōnsiliō,<sup>1</sup> quī Hamilcar appellātus est, diū in Siciā cum Rōmānīs pūgnābat. Deinde in Hispāniā **proeliis** secundis barbarōs **hominēs** oppūgnāvit.

## 145.

## WORD-LIST.

<b>homō, hominis</b> , m. (and f.), <i>man</i> (sometimes <i>mankind</i> ).	<b>summus, -a, -um</b> , <i>greatest, highest</i> .
<b>annus, annī</b> , m., <i>year</i> .	<b>ad</b> , prep. with acc. <i>to, at</i> .
<b>proelium, proelī</b> , <i>battle</i> .	Used with the <i>place to which</i> .
<b>flūmen, flūminis</b> , n., <i>river</i> .	

## 146.

## REGULUS.

The people of Rome were very skilful in war, and fought with the people of Carthage in many battles. In the first war with Carthage, Regulus, a Roman chief, with (his) soldiers was defeated in a battle at a place near<sup>2</sup> Carthage. But after<sup>3</sup> IV years the men of Carthage were defeated by the Romans in Sicily. Then the chiefs of Carthage said,<sup>4</sup> “Regulus, the captive Roman, shall be an envoy to Rome. Peace (130, d) will be pleasing to this Roman captive, for if<sup>5</sup> there be peace he will be free.”

<sup>1</sup> See 149.<sup>2</sup> *prope*.<sup>3</sup> *post*.<sup>4</sup> *dixerunt*.<sup>5</sup> *sī*.

## LESSON XXV.

### THIRD DECLENSION.—CONTINUED.

147.

STEMS IN *i*.

<b>collis</b> , m., <i>hill.</i> Stem <b>collis</b> -	<b>hostis</b> , m., <i>enemy.</i> St. <b>hosti</b> -	<b>mare</b> , n., <i>sea.</i> St. <b>mari</b> -
---	--	---

SINGULAR.

NOM. <b>collis</b>	hostis	mare
GEN. <b>collis</b>	hostis	maris
DAT. <b>collī</b>	hostī	marī
ACC. <b>collem</b>	hostem	mare
ABL. <b>collī, -e</b>	hoste	marī
VOC. ( <b>collis</b> )	(hostis)	(mare)

PLURAL.

NOM. <b>collēs</b>	hostēs	maria
GEN. <b>collium</b>	hostium	
DAT. <b>collibus</b>	hostibus	maribus
ACC. <b>collīs, -ēs</b>	hostīs, -ēs	maria
ABL. <b>collibus</b>	hostibus	maribus
VOC. ( <b>collēs</b> )	(hostēs)	(maria)

*a.* How do the declensions of **collis** and **hostis** differ? The most common of the nouns declined like **collis** are **finis**, *end*; **ignis**, *fire*; **civis**, *citizen*.

*b.* Nouns having **i-stems** are **marked** in the **vocabulary**, thus, **fīnis**, **-is** (**fīni-**).

*c.* Decline also **latus**, **lateris**, n., *side* (cp. **lātus**, **-a**, **-um**); **multitūdō**, **-inis**, f., *multitude*; **pars**, **partis** (**parti-**), f.,



*part*; rūpēs, rūpis (rūpi-), f., rock, cliff; vallis, vallis (valli-), valley.

## 148.

## EXAMPLES.

Mārcus miles fuit māgnā virtūte, } *Marcus was a soldier*  
 Mārcus miles fuit māgnae virtūtis, } *of great bravery.*  
 Ītalia est terra multīs urbibus, } *Italy is a land with*  
 Ītalia est terra multārum urbium, } *many cities.*

a. Notice that in these sentences the ablative or genitive is used with an adjective to **describe Mārcus** or **Ītalia**.

**149. RULE.** A person or thing may be **described** by the **ablative** or the **genitive** of a **noun**, if an **adjective** be used with the **noun**. Descriptive Ablative or Genitive.

a. The noun **must** be limited by an **adjective**. That is, it is incorrect to say in Latin, as we do in English, "a man of courage," or "a man of wealth." Some **adjective** must be used: "a man of great courage," "of abundant wealth."

## 150.

## ALLIED WORDS.

Altitude	Auxiliary	Depopulate	Innumerable
Armory	Bonus	Filial	Legation

## 151.

## HANNIBAL ET SCĪPIŌ.—II.

Scipiō Rōmānus et Hannibal pueri **annīs**<sup>1</sup> paucis cum patribus fuērunt in proeliis, ille in Ītaliā, hic in Hispāniā. Fuērunt summae virtūtis. Scipiō, adulēscēns XVII **annōrum**, patrem in proeliō ad Ticīnum flūmen servāvit. Hannibal, adulēscēns nōn XX **annīs** cum patre oppida in Hispāniā oppūgnāvit.

Multis cum hominibus, peditibus equitibusque, per Galliam, terram māgnis cum silvis flūminibusque altis, ivit atque Rōmānōs in Ītaliā oppūgnāvit. Cum patre Scipiōnis ad flūmen Ticīnum pūgnāvit. In proeliō ad locum quī Cannae appellātus est LXX milia militum māgnusque numerus prin-

<sup>1</sup> See 145.

cupum Rōmānōrum interfecti sunt. Tamen Rōmānī summā virtūte nōn superāti sunt.

Hasdrubal, frāter Hannibalis, post **annōs** VIII ei auxilium dare temptāvit, et multis cum hominibus per Galliam ad Ītaliā ivit. In proeliō prope flūmen Metaurum ā Rōmānīs interfectus est. Caput eius ad Hannibalem portātum est. “**Ō** Carthāgō, tuam fortūnam āgnōscō!” dixit Hannibal. Tum ei auxilium nōn erat. Scīpiō post **annōs** III Āfricā occupāre temptāvit. Hannibal suās cōpiās ad Āfricā trānsportāvit, sed in proeliō ad locum Zamam superātus est.

**152.** REGULUS.—*Continued.*

But Regulus loved Rome. He told the Romans, “The chiefs of Carthage are weary of the war, and are in great want of supplies. Peace (130, *d*) will be acceptable to them. Attack them zealously. In this way they will be conquered.” His friends told him, “We will attack the enemy (147). But why (117, N. 1) give yourself<sup>1</sup> to them?” He told them, “This advice of yours is not good. I am a captive and the ambassador of the chiefs of Carthage. I will give myself<sup>2</sup> (up) to them, for (141, N. 3) a man of the greatest manliness will not be false<sup>3</sup> even<sup>4</sup> to (his) enemies.”

He went back<sup>5</sup> to the city (153) Carthage, and was killed (141, N. 6) by the chiefs of Carthage.

<sup>1</sup> tē.    <sup>2</sup> mē.    <sup>3</sup> falsus, -a, -um.    <sup>4</sup> etiam.    <sup>5</sup> iterum.



MĀRCUS ATĪLIUS RĒGULUS.

## LESSON XXVI.

### THIRD DECLENSION.

**153.**

STEMS IN **i**.—*Continued.*

<b>mōns</b> , m., <i>mountain.</i> Stem <b>monti-</b>	<b>urbs</b> , f., <i>city.</i> <b>urbi-</b>	<b>nox</b> , f., <i>night.</i> <b>nocti-</b> (cp. 2, 3)
---	---	---

#### SINGULAR.

NOM.	mōns	urbs	nox
GEN.	montis	urbis	noctis
DAT.	montī	urbī	noctī
ACC.	montem	urbem	noctem
ABL.	monte	urbe	nocte
VOC.	(mōns)	(urbs)	(nox)

#### PLURAL.

NOM.	montēs	urbēs	noctēs
GEN.	montium	urbium	noctium
DAT.	montibus	urbibus	noctibus
ACC.	montīs, -ēs	urbīs, -ēs	noctīs, -ēs
ABL.	montibus	urbibus	noctibus
VOC.	(montēs)	(urbēs)	(noctēs)

*a.* Decline **cliēns, clientis**, m., *a dependent*; **arx, arcis**, f., *a citadel*.

*b.* Decline together **parva urbs**, *small city*; **animal** (470) **māgnum**, *large animal*; **nigra nūbēs** (470), *black cloud*; **haec arx**, *this citadel*; **illud mare**, *that sea*.

**154. To i-stems belong :**

**Nouns in -is** and **-ēs** which have the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative, as **rūpēs**, **cīvis**.

**Neuters in -e, -al, -er**, as **mare**, **animal**.

Most **nouns in -ns** and **-rs**, as **cliēns**, **cohors**. I-stems.

Many **monosyllables** in **s** or **x** following a consonant, as **mōns**, **arx**.

**155. COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE.**

**Urbem oppūgnāre temptāvit**, *He tried to attack the city.*

*a.* In this sentence the **infinitive** is used as in English. This construction has been freely used in preceding exercises. Complementary  
Infinitive.

The infinitive used thus (as complement), to complete the meaning of a verb, is called the **Complementary Infinitive**.

*b.* Its position is **immediately before** the verb. The pupil should train himself to group an infinitive which immediately precedes a finite verb with the verb, treating the two as nearly as possible as though they were a single word.

**156. ALLIED WORDS.**

Magnate	Pedestrian	Prince	Viaduct
Pedal	Pugnacity	Sylvan	Captivity

**157. PROELIUM CUM HELVĒTIIS.—I.**

Helvētii, barbari hominēs Galliae, terram Aeduōrum occupāre temptāvērunt. **Quoniam** haec terra est prope illam partem Galliae quae Prōvincia appellābātur, Caesar quī Prōvinciae erat princeps cum Helvētiis pūgnāvit.

Diū Caesar eōs nōn oppūgnāvit, tamen alterum **agmen** ab alterō numquam longē ab-erat. Tandem ā Bibracte, māgnō oppidō Aeduōrum, nōn longē **agmina** ā-fuērunt.

Ad eum locum Caesar cum **legiōnibus** properāvit, nam ibi cōpia frūmentī erat. Id prīncipibus Helvētiōrum nūntiātum est. Dixērunt, “Fuga nōne est? In **agmen legiōnum** eius properābimus. Facilis victōria militibus nostris erit.” Ad novissimum **agmen** Caesaris properāvērunt multōsque vulnerābant. Paucī interfectī sunt. Cōpiās Caesar in proximō **colle** conlocāvit. In hōc locō **legiōnēs** IV, sed in summō **colle** II novās **legiōnēs** atque omnia auxilia impedi-  
mentaue conlocāvit.

Helvētīi **legiōnēs** quæ in **colle** erant celeriter oppūgnāvērunt. Rōmānī ē locō superiōre tēlis Helvētiōs perturbāvērunt; deinde gladiis militēs **legiōnum** eōs oppūgnāvērunt. Tandem dēfessī Helvētīi ad altum **collem** quī nōn longē ab-erat sē recēpērunt. Ad hunc **collem** militēs Caesaris properābant.

## 158.

## WORD-LIST.

**legiō, legiōnis, f.,** a division of the Roman army, containing from 3000 to 6000 men.

**agmen, agminis, n.,** army on the march, a marching column.

**collis, collis, m.,** hill.—**summus collis,** top of a hill.

**quoniam, adv.,** because.

## 159. (See 129, 133, 140, and 145.)

The Helvetians were a people who were eager for war, and very brave. Their land was not acceptable to them, because there were many high mountains in it. They attacked the peoples of Gaul and tried to seize their land. But the Haedui were friends of the Roman people, and told Caesar by messenger, “If (146, N. 3) you do not give (us) help we will be overcome by the Helvetians.” Because of this<sup>1</sup> which the Haedui had told him Caesar with (his) legions gave help to the Gauls who were attacked by the Helvetians.

<sup>1</sup> 137.

## LESSON XXVII.

### ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

**160.**                      *ācer, eager, keen.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	<i>ācer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
GEN.	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>
DAT.	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>
ACC.	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācris, -ēs</i>	<i>ācris, ēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
ABL.	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>
VOC.	( <i>ācer</i> )	( <i>ācris</i> )	( <i>ācre</i> )	( <i>ācrēs</i> )	( <i>ācrēs</i> )	( <i>ācria</i> )

Like *ācer* decline *celer, celeris, celere, swift.*

### 161.

1. A **CLAUSE** is any part of a sentence containing a **subject**, a **verb**, and usually an **object**.

Sometimes one or more of these are not expressed if they can be easily supplied.

2. The **MAIN CLAUSE** or clauses of a sentence are those which, if used alone, would be **grammatically complete** (or make complete sense).

If there are two or more main clauses they are united by such conjunctions as **et, atque, sed, tamen**.

3. The **MAIN VERB** of a sentence is the verb of its **main clause**. Sometimes there are several main verbs.

**Principal and Subordinate Clauses.**

4. A **SUBORDINATE CLAUSE** is a clause in its meaning **modifying some other clause** in the same sentence.

Such clauses are **introduced** by relative pronouns (who, which, etc.), or by subordinate particles (when, since, etc.).

a. These definitions are not without exceptions, but will probably be found exact enough for all practical purposes.

b. The Latin usually has **only one main clause** in each sentence. English usage is very different from the Latin in this respect.

c. In the following example the main clause is printed in small capitals: SED INTER HUNC COLLEM ad quem legiōnēs properābant ATQUE LOCUM in quō primum pūgnāverant ERANT MULTĪ BŌIĪ ET TULINGĪ, MĪLITĒS quī in novissimō agmine hostis fuerant.

### 162. ORDER OF WORDS.

1. Frequently modifying words or phrases come **before** the word modified. This is the opposite of the English order, except with adjectives: **Summae virtūtis homō**, *A man of the greatest courage*. **Prope flūmen Metaurum ā Rōmānīs interfectus est**, *He was killed near the river Metaurus by the Romans*. Order of Words.

2. The **emphatic** or important words come **toward the first**.

3. The **verb**, excepting **sum**, comes at the **end** of its clause. Exceptions to this rule are very rare.

### 163. ALLIED WORDS.

Devious	Equine	Homicide	Magnitude
Equestrian	Flume	Liberality	Multiplicand

### 164. PROELIUM CUM HELVĒTĪS. — II.

Sed inter hunc collem ad quem legiōnēs **properābant** atque locum in quō primum pūgnāverant, erant multī BŌiĪ et TulingĪ, milites quī in novissimō agmine **hostis** fuerant. Hī summō studiō legiōnēs oppūgnāvērunt. Tum **reliquī hostēs**, quī in altō colle erant, rursus cum Rōmānīs pūgnāre **properāvērunt**. Cum his duae partēs legiōnum, cum illis tertia pars pugnāvit. In hōc locō diū **hostis** pūgnābat.

Tandem multi Helvētii rursus in collem, **reliquī** ad impedimenta, sē recēpērunt. Hōc proelium ab horā septimā ad **noctem** pūgnātum est. Ad multam **noctem** ad impedimenta pūgnābant. Tandem castra **hostis** ā legiōnibus capta sunt.

**Reliquī** Helvētii in fugā ex-ivērunt. Agmen eōrum in Lingonum terram **properāvit**. Propter Caesaris nūntiōs frūmentum eis Lingonēs nōn dabant. Frūmenti inopiā lēgāti ex **hostibus** ad Caesarem ivērunt; **obsidēs** armaque ei dedērunt.

Sed postquam **obsidēs** dati erant, multi ē castris ex-ivērunt atque ad Rhēnum flūmen **properāvērunt**. Celeriter hī capti sunt. **Reliquī** Helvētii et Tulingi in terram suam rursus ivērunt, postquam māgnum numerum **obsidum** dedērunt. Hōrum **obsidum** multi filii principum erant. Aedui **reliquīs** Bōiis agrōs dedērunt.

## 165.

## WORD-LIST.

**nox, noctis**, f., *night*.

**hostis, hostis**, m. and f.,  
*enemy*.

**obses, obsidis**, m. and f.,  
*hostage, a person held as a  
pledge for the performance  
of a treaty*.

**reliquus, -a, -um**, *remaining,  
the rest of*.

**properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**,  
*to hasten, hurry*.

## 166.

## CAESAR'S FIRST FIGHT WITH THE HELVETIANS.

The river Arar flows<sup>1</sup> through<sup>2</sup> the lands of the Haedui and Sequani. It is told Caesar, "Three<sup>3</sup> parts of the forces of the Helvetians have crossed<sup>4</sup> the river." He hastens from the camp with three legions to that portion of their forces which has not crossed the river. He attacks this part, to which the rest of the Helvetians, because they have crossed the river, give no help.

Thus a great number of the Helvetians are overcome by the Roman soldiers.

<sup>1</sup> *influit*.    <sup>2</sup> *per*.    <sup>3</sup> *trēs*.    <sup>4</sup> *trāns-ivērunt*.



# THE ROMAN DOMINIONS

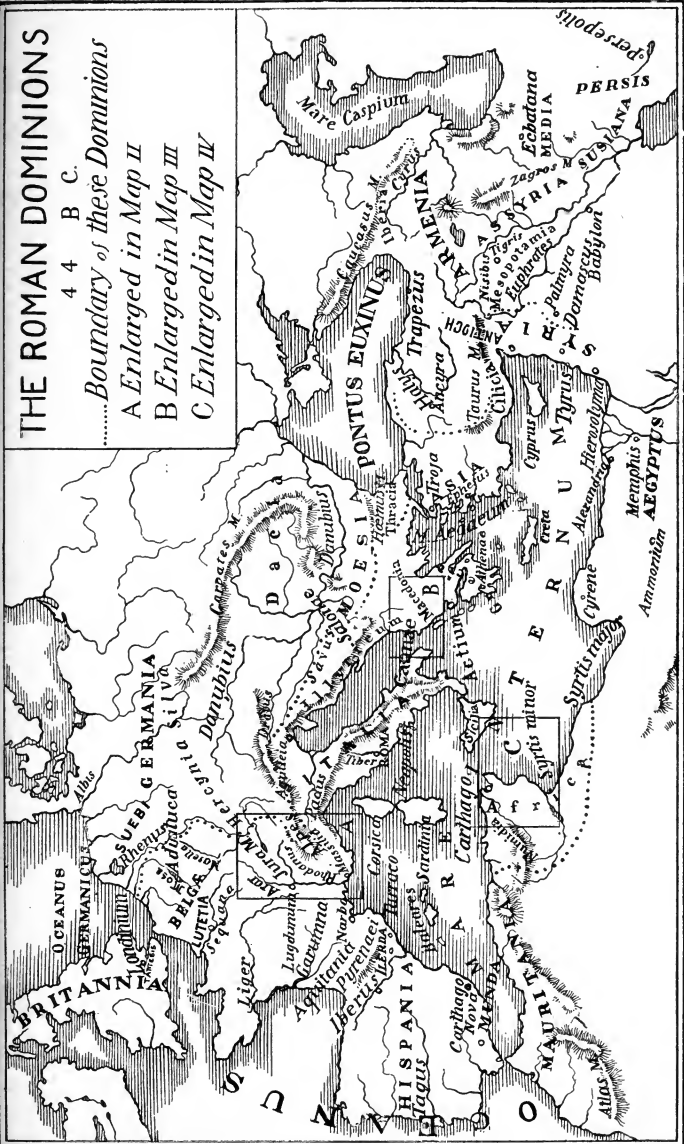
4 4 B C.

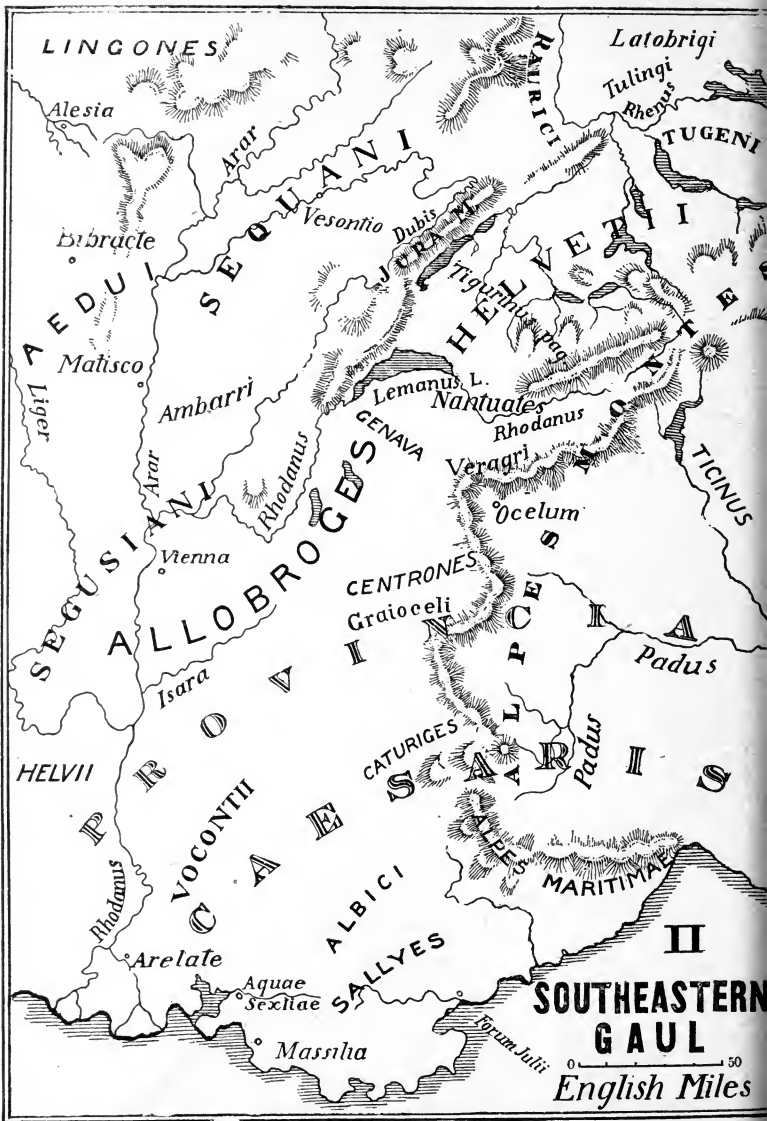
.....Boundary of these Dominions

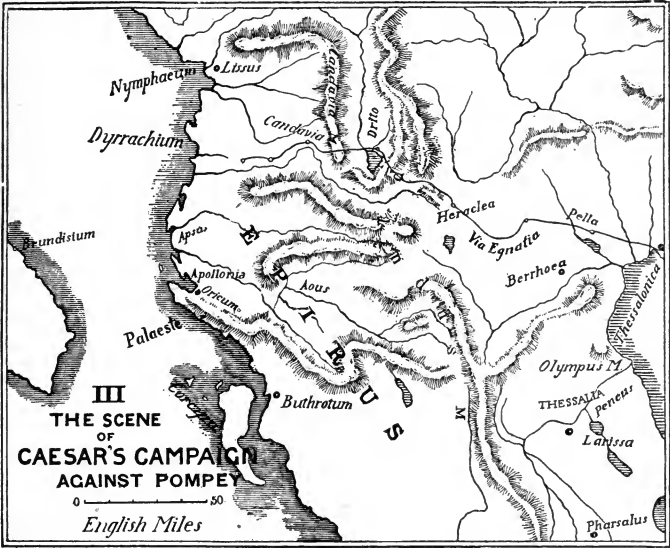
A Enlarged in Map II

B Enlarged in Map III

C Enlarged in Map IV







## LESSON XXVIII.

### ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.—CONTINUED

**167.**            **facilis**, *easy*.    Stem **facili-**.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
NOM.	facilis	facile	facilēs	facilia
GEN.	facilis	facilis	facilium	facilium
DAT.	facilī	facilī	facilibus	facilibus
ACC.	facilem	facile	facilīs, -ēs	facilia
ABL.	facilī	facilī	facilibus	facilibus
VOC.	(facilis	facile)	(facilēs	facilia)

**levis**, *light, nimble*.    Stem **levi-**.

NOM.	levis	leve	levēs	levia
GEN.	levis	levis	levium	levium
DAT.	levī	levī	levibus	levibus
ACC.	levem	leve	levīs, -ēs	levia
ABL.	levī	levī	levibus	levibus
VOC.	(levis	leve)	(levēs	levia)

**vēlōx**, *swift*.

NOM.	vēlōx	vēlōx	vēlōcēs	vēlōcia
GEN.	vēlōcis	vēlōcis	vēlōcium	vēlōcium
DAT.	vēlōcī	vēlōcī	vēlōcibus	vēlōcibus
ACC.	vēlōcēm	vēlōx	vēlōcīs, -ēs	vēlōcia
ABL.	vēlōcī, -e	vēlōcī, -e	vēlōcibus	vēlōcibus
VOC.	(vēlōx	vēlōx)	(vēlōcēs	vēlōcia)

**sapiēns, wise.**

NOM.	sapiēns	sapiēns	sapientēs	sapientia
GEN.	sapientīs	sapientīs	sapientium	sapientium
DAT.	sapientī	sapientī	sapientibus	sapientibus
ACC.	sapientem	sapiēns	sapientīs, -ēs	sapientia
ABL.	sapientī, -e	sapientī, -e	sapientibus	sapientibus
VOC.	(sapiēns	sapiēns)	(sapientēs	sapientia)

*a.* Adjectives declined like **acer** (160) are called adjectives of three terminations; those declined like **facilis** or **levis**, adjectives of two terminations; those declined like **vēlōx** and **sapiēns**, adjectives of one termination.

*b.* Notice that adjectives of three terminations (like **ācer**) and of two terminations (like **facilis**) have **only -ī in the ablative singular.**

**168.**

## ALLIED WORDS.

Equinox

Omnibus

Reliquary

Hostile

Partial

Renovation

Littoral

Popularity

Virtuous

**169. Learn to unite**

A **genitive** with the **nearest** noun or pro-noun.

Hints  
for Reading.

A **preposition** with its noun. The noun **follows** the preposition.

**Adjectives** with words in the **same cases.**

An **infinitive** which immediately **precedes** a verb with the verb.

*a.* Words composing such groups are united by **hyphens** (-) in portions of this lesson, and of some following lessons, as an aid to the pupil in learning to group the words.

**170.**

CAESAR ATQUE CLASSIS POMPEĪ.

## INTRODUCTION.

Caesar first made his reputation as a general after

he had gone from Rome to govern the province of Gaul. Rome was then ruled by a senate whose members came almost entirely from a few families of rank. When Caesar became governor he ruled little more than a strip of land along the Mediterranean and the valley of the Po, or Padus, in modern Italy. In six years he had conquered all of Gaul, the land now called France. His "Gallic Wars" (the "Caesar" studied in schools) describes these campaigns. By an almost endless number of battles and marches he drilled and perfected an army probably finer than any the world had thus far seen.

The senate at Rome at that time ruled almost all of the nations whom the Romans considered civilized. The senators knew that Caesar was ambitious to destroy their power and rule in their place. Cicero, some of whose orations are usually studied after "Caesar," was one of their leaders. Now that Gaul had been conquered they feared that Caesar would attack them.

They turned to Pompey, or Pompeius, who was considered the greatest general of the time, refused to grant what Caesar wished, and began to enroll soldiers throughout Italy. But Caesar, entering Italy, burst upon them so suddenly that the recruits had scarcely time to gather before they were compelled to surrender to his advancing army. Pompey and his friends went to Brundisium, and thence sailed to Greece.

Here they were unmolested for a whole year, for Caesar had no fleet and thought it the best course first to invade Spain and subdue an army which opposed him there. When at last he returned to fight with Pompey his first difficulty was to transport his army by sea from Brundisium to Epirus in the face of Pompey's fleet. The risks he took in doing this are told in the following account, adapted from his "Civil Wars."

## I.

Pompēius, quoniam annī - spatium sine - bellō - atque - hoste eī fuerat, māgnās - cōpiās **parāverat**. Ex - **omnibus - regiōnibus** ad - **lītora** māgnam - **classem parāverat**. Māgna - pecūnia eī ab - Asiā,<sup>1</sup> - Syriā, - rēgibusque - **omnibus**, - et - liberis - Graeciae - populis data - est ; māgnam hominēs - eārum - **omnium - regiōnum**, quārum ipse prīnceps erat, eī dederant. Legiōnēs eī erant cīvium - Rōmānōrum VIII, ūna ex - Ciliciā veterāna, ūna ex - Crētā - et - Macedoniā ex - veterānis - militibus, quī in - his - **regiōnibus** agrōs - atque - pecūniam habēbant ; II ex - Asiā. Cum - Scipiōne ex - Syriā legiōnēs III properāre - **parābant**. Sagittariōs ex Syriā reliquisque **regiōnibus** III milia habuit, equitumque VII milia. Ex quibus ad numerum D prīnceps ex Thraciā dederat ; ex Macedoniā CC erant, quōrum prīnceps summā virtūte fuit ; D ex Alexandriā, Gallōs Germānōsque, quī ibi ad rēgem fuerant, Pompēi filius **classe** portāverat. Frūmentī cōpiam māgnam ex Asiā, Crētā, reliquisque **regiōnibus parāverat**, quae **classe** ad **lītus** Ēpiri portābātur.

Pompēius cum suis legiōnibus ad Ēpirum vēnit. **Lītus** hūius **regiōnis** est contrā Ītaliā, ubi Caesaris cōpiae conlocātae sunt. **Classem**, quae in **omnibus lītoribus parāta** erat, ad **lītora** Ēpiri conlocāvit. Prīnceps **omnis** hūius **classis** erat Bibulus.

## 171.

## WORD-LIST.

classis, classis, f., *fleet*.lītus, lītoris, n., *coast*.regiō, regiōnis, f., *direction*,  
*region*.parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to*  
*prepare*.omnis, omne, *all*.

## 172.

## POMPEY.

Cnaeus Pompeius had fought in many lands. In Italy (when) a young man (i.e. of few years) he had

<sup>1</sup> See Map I for the places mentioned in this paragraph.

given help to Sulla, a great Roman general,<sup>1</sup> against<sup>2</sup> the legions which he was attacking. Many men were killed (141, n. 6) by Sulla, who gave their lands to his soldiers. But he was the friend of Pompey. "You are," he had told him, "Pompeius the Great." In Africa Pompey defeated the enemies of Sulla. In Spain he fought with Sertorius successfully (in successful<sup>3</sup> battles), a chief of great skill and daring. In Italy five thousand slaves,<sup>4</sup> who had been fighting with the Romans and were hastening into Gaul, were overcome by him. Because of all these successful wars he was loved by the Roman people.

<sup>1</sup> imperator.<sup>2</sup> contra.<sup>3</sup> secundus, -a, -um.<sup>4</sup> servus.

CNAEUS POMPEIUS MAGNUS.



## LESSON XXIX.

### THE ABLATIVE OF TIME.

#### 173. EXAMPLES.

*Prīmā lūce ad castra properāvērunt, At daybreak they hastened to the camp.*

*Nocte in fugā ex-ivērunt, They departed in flight by night.*

*Hīs decem annīs multās terrās oppūgnāvit, Within these ten years he has attacked many lands.*

Notice that the **ablatives** in these sentences answer the question **when?** or, **within what time?** Ablative of Time.

**174. RULE.**—Time when, or within which, is expressed by the **ablative**.

#### 175. ALLIED WORDS.

Agrarian	Militate	Numerical
Impugn	Navy	Principality
Inter	Nocturnal	Reconciliation
	Virile	

#### 176. CAESAR ATQUE CLASSIS POMPEI.—II.

Caesar ex - urbe ad - oppidum - Brundisium hōc - tempore vēnit. Ad - hunc - locum legiōnēs - XII, equitēsque - omnēs ivērunt. Māgna eī fuit **nāvium** - inopia, tamen militibus ita dixit; “Quoniam estis prope - finem - labōrum - atque - periculōrum, in - Italiā impedimenta conlocāte, omnia ex - victōriā sperāte, atque cum - Pompēiō fortiter pugnāre - parāte.” Hieme, cum - VII - legiōnibus,

**nāvēs** solvit, quārum longae - **nāvēs** XII erant. Brevi - tempore ad - litus - Ēpiri vēnit, atque ad - eum - locum, qui Palaeste appellābātur, ex - omnibus - **nāvibus** milites ex-ivērunt.

Id principibus Pompēi classis nūntiātum est. Māgna erat Bibulī classis, nam prope Palaestem **nāvēs** CXXVIII conlocātae erant. Acer erat Bibulus, sed Caesaris cōsiliō superātus erat. Celeriter **nāvēs** solvit, atque Caesaris XXX **nāvēs**, quae rūsus ad oppidum Brundisium properāre temptābant, omnes incendit, atque hōc igni quī in **nāvibus** erant interfecti sunt. Tum omne litus classibus hieme occupāvit.

## 177

## WORD-LIST.

**nāvis**, **nāvis**, f., *ship*.

## 178.

POMPEY.—*Continued.*

The men of Cilicia with their fleets attacked the ships of the Romans along<sup>1</sup> all parts of the coast. At that time grain was brought to Italy by ship from Africa and Sicily. Because of these fleets there was a great lack of grain in Rome. The Roman people gave five hundred ships to Pompey. With this fleet he attacked the enemy, who had a great number of ships. But because they had not stationed all of these ships in one (125) place, many of them in a short time were killed. The rest retreated<sup>2</sup> to Cilicia and Crete. Pompey attacked their towns in Cilicia, which were given (up) to him.

<sup>1</sup> in.<sup>2</sup> sē recēpērunt

## LESSON XXX.

### SECOND CONJUGATION. Ē-VERBS.

**Moneō** (stem **monē-**) *advise*.

Principal parts, **moneō**, **monēre**, **monuī**, **monitus**.

**179.** Learn the present, imperfect and future indicative, and the present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of **moneō** (481).

*a.* Compare the forms of **moneō** with those of **amō**. How do they differ?

*b.* Why is it a help in inflecting **moneō** to remember that its stem ends in **ē**?

**180.** 1. Monent, monēbant, monēbunt. 2. Monētur, monēbātur, monēbitur. 3. Monet, monēbat, monēbit. 4. Monentur, monēmur, monēmini. 5. Moneor, monēmus, monēbimus. 6. Monēbuntur, monē, monēre. 7. Monēbimur, monēbantur, monēri. 8. Monēbō, monēbāmur, monēte. 9. Monēbam, monēbar, monēbāmus. 10. Monēbor, moneō.

**181.** Like **moneō** inflect in both voices **habeō**, have; **teneō**, hold; **prohibeō**, keep away.

**182.**

#### ALLIED WORDS.

Annual

Gladiator

Legacy

Class

Habit

Tribunal

Counselor

Itinerary

Urban

## 183. CAESAR ATQUE CLASSIS POMPEÏ.—III.

Eō tempore in Candaviā Pompēius erat, **iter**que ē Macedoniā ad **urbēs** Apollōniam Dyrrhachiumque **habēbat**. Quoniam ā Caesare litus occupābātur māgnis **itineribus** ad **urbem** Apollōniam properāvit. Sed ille, postquam cum mīlitibus ē nāvibus ex-īvit, ad oppidum Oricum celeriter **iter habēbat**, cūius oppidī Graeci sē atque oppidum eī in dēditionem dēdērunt. Celeriter ad **urbem** Apollōniam **iter habēbat**. Id Staberīō, quī ibi lēgātus Pompēi erat, nūntiābātur. Aquam in arcem portāvit atque obsidēs ē populō **urbis** petivit. Sed quoniam ī eī nōn datī sunt, fūgit ex **urbe** Staberius. Ad Caesarem lēgātī ex hāc **urbe** et ē regiōnibus finitimis vēnērunt atque omnia in dēditionem eī dēdērunt. Tum Caesar ad **urbem** Dyrrhachium properāre temptāvit.

Sed Pompēius ā - nūntiīs monēbātur, atque ad - **urbem** - Dyrrhachium etiam nocte māgnis - **itineribus** properāvit. Caesare militēs - eius perterrēbantur, multique quī hominēs - Epīri erant ē - signis ex-īvērunt. Sed prope - Dyrrhachium Labiēnus vēnit et Pompēiō iūrāvit, “ Fīdus per - omnia erō.” Hōc idem reliquī - lēgātī - tribūnique - mīlitum atque omnēs - militēs iūrāvērunt.

Ad - **urbem** primus Pompēius vēnit, atque ita ab - hāc - **urbe** cum - regiōnibus - finitimis Caesarem prohibēbat.

## 184.

## WORD-LIST.

**iter, itineris**, n., *a road, a march, journey.*      **habēō, habēre, habuī, habitum**, *to have.*

**urbs, urbis**, f., *city.*

## 185.

## LABIENUS.

Labiēnus was a man of great bravery and skill in war. (As) lieutenant of Caesar he had fought against (172, n. 2) the Helvetians. In a battle with the Nervii he with two legions attacked and seized the camp of the enemy, and then quickly (134, n. 2) gave help

to Caesar, who was with two legions whose soldiers had become terrified and were almost<sup>1</sup> overcome.

In many battles he was faithful to Caesar, but after the latter had conquered the Gauls, because he attacked Pompey, Labienus fought against him in four great battles, and was killed<sup>3</sup> in the battle which was fought at the town Munda, in the country (of) Spain.

<sup>1</sup> paene.<sup>2</sup> postquam.<sup>3</sup> 141, N. 6.

The four battles mentioned in 185 are as follows:

At *Dyrrhachium* Caesar tried to shut Pompey in by earthworks. Pompey finally entered Caesar's lines by landing troops at a point where no entrenchments faced the sea, and drove back a counter-attack. Caesar then marched rapidly into Thessaly. Here, at *Pharsalia*, Pompey confidently attacked, but was overthrown, and soon after assassinated (48 B.C.). Caesar's opponents then gathered in Africa, but were routed at *Thapsus*. Some leaders fled to Spain, where the exactions of Caesar's officers and the fear that Caesar would revoke favors due to Pompey aided them in gathering a large army, led by the sons of Pompey, Cnaeus and Sextus. After *Munda* (45 B.C.), Cnaeus, wounded and carried on a litter, fled to the mountains, but was betrayed and killed. Sextus remained among the Pyrenees until Caesar's death. A son of Labienus fled to the east, and was honored by the Great King of the Parthians, who ruled over the kings of Mesopotamia and Persia. This Labienus issued coins as a Parthian official, some of which are extant. He attacked Syria after Caesar's death, but was checked by Antony's lieutenants.



QUINTUS LABIENUS PARTHICUS.

## LESSON XXXI.

### 186. SECOND CONJUGATION.—CONTINUED.

Learn the perfect, pluperfect and future perfect indicative, active and passive, of **moneō**. (481.)

#### 187.

1. Monuī, monitus sum. 2. Monuit, monuerat, monuerit 3. Monitus erit, monuerint. 4. Monueram, monueris, monuērunt. 5. Monuistī, monuerās, monuisse. 6. Monitus eram, monitus est, monitum esse. 7. Monita erat, monita es.

#### 188.

*a.* Compare the forms **amābās, portābāmus, nūntiābat, tenēbam, monēbant**. To what tense do they belong, and to what conjugations? If we remove the personal endings (76), **amābā-, portābā-, nūnti-** Tense Signs.  
**āba-, tenēba-, monēba-** are left. Notice **ba**, found in them all. What does **ba** mean? It is called the **tense sign** of the **imperfect** tense. Why is it given this name?

*b.* Has the future tense any tense sign?

#### 189.

#### ALLIED WORDS.

Announce	Frumentary	Itinerate	Prohibition	Temporal
Date	Habitual	Nave	Tenable	Urbane

#### 190. CAESAR ET CLASSIS POMPEÏ.—IV.

In order that the pupil may acquire the habit of noting the endings, they are printed in heavy-faced type in parts of this and the following lesson.

Caesar sua castra ad flūmen Apsūm conlocāvit, et ibi reliquās ex Italiā legiōnēs expectābat. Pompēius in castris trans flūmen Apsūm suās cōpiās omnēs auxiliaque tenēbat, sed frumentum Caesaris prohibēre temptābat.

Interim Calēnus lēgātus quī cum reliquīs legiōnibus equitibusque in urbe Brundisiō erat nāvēs quās habēbat solvit. Bonā fortūnā brevī tempore nāvīs quae nūntiōs ex Caesare portābat ad eum vēnit. Nūntiī monēbant, “Omnia litora classibus Pompēi tenentur.” Sē in urbem omnibus cum suis nāvibus recēpit. Ūna ex hīs nāvibus, in quā nullī militēs erant, nōn sē recēpit atque ā Bibulō capta est. Omnēs in eā ad unum interfectī sunt.

Lēgātus Pompēi, Libō, ab oppidō Oricō ex-īvit cum classe cuius princeps erat, C nāvium, ad urbem Brundisium insulamque, quae contrā urbem est, occupāvit. Nōn māgnū numerum nāvium incendit, et multōs militēs Calēni perterrēbat. Nocte eius militēs atque sagittārii in terram ē classe ex-ivērunt, et Calēni equitēs perterrēbant. Pompēiō per nūntiōs nūntiāvit, “Ipse meā classe auxilia Caesaris prohibēbō.” Ab urbe ā legiōnibus Calēni cōpiae prohibēbantur, tamen insulam tenēbant, sed ex aquā prohibēbantur equitibus quōs Antōnius, lēgātus summā virtūte, quī eō tempore in urbe erat, per litus conlocāverat. Inopiae causā aquae Libō ab insulā brevī tempore ex-īvit.

Tamen multum - tempus erat et hiems iam ad-fuerat, neque ab - urbe - Brundisiō nāvēs - legiōnēsque vēnērunt ad - Caesarem, quī suās - cōpiās in - castris tenēbat. Calēnus nōn suās - nāvēs solvit quoniam numerō - nāvium Bibulus superābat, atque omnia - litora māgnō - studiō - cōnsiliōque tenēbat. Ita auxilium ā - Caesare prohibēre temptābat.

## 191.

## WORD-LIST.

ex (before a consonant, usually ē), Preposition followed by Ablative, *from*.

tempus, temporis, n., *time*.  
suus, sua, suum, *his, their*.

[OVER]

**prohibeō, prohibēre, prohi-**      **teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus**  
**buī, prohibitus,** *to keep*      *to hold, keep.*  
*away.* Often with **ex**.

a. **Suus, sua, suum** frequently refers to the subject of the sentence.

b. For "his" or "their," when the reference is not to the subject, "**ēius,**" "**eōrum,**" "**illius,**" "**illōrum,**" or the genitive of some similar pronoun is used.

For instance: *The Gauls attacked the troops of the legate, but their horsemen were easily compelled by his soldiers to retire*  
 Gallī cōpiās lēgātī oppūgnāvērunt, sed **suī** equitēs facile  
 ā **ēius** militibus sē recipere coāctī sunt.

Note that **suī** agrees with **equitēs** in gender, number and case, precisely as an adjective would.

### 192.

The island opposite the town Brundisium was seized by Libo, a lieutenant of Pompey, with his fleet of a hundred ships. Calenus, Caesar's lieutenant, had at this time five legions in the city, and kept Libo away from it; still his soldiers were terrified.

There was no water upon the island, and for this reason the soldiers of Libo attempted to carry water from the (main)land to the island. But Antony, a lieutenant and good friend of Caesar, stationed horsemen along the coast, who kept them from (securing) water. Because of this Libo soon went away from the island.



## LESSON XXXII.

### THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.

193.

EXAMPLES.

Gallī Rōmānōs cōnsiliō nōn superābant, *The Gauls did not surpass the Romans in skill.*

Haec terra illī flūminum numerō est similis, *This country is like that one in the number of its rivers.*

Galba nōmine tantum prīnceps fuit, *Galba was leader only in name.*

Cōnsiliō limits superābant in meaning. In the same way numerō and nōmine limit similis and prīnceps. The ablative thus used is called the **Ablative of Specification**, because it **specifies in what respect** a statement is true.

Ablative of  
Specification.

194.

RULE.—The **Ablative of Specification** is used to point out **in what respect a statement is true.**

195.

ALLIED WORDS.

Affiliation	Equinoctial	Insuperable	Multiply	Sum
Armament	Grateful	Liberation	Numerous	Unfortunate

196. CAESAR ATQUE CLASSIS POMPEĪ.—V.

Tandem Caesar suōs principēs quī erant ad oppidum Brundisium monuit, “Prīmō tempore secundō ad litora Ēpirī properāte.” Brevī tempore Auster flābat atque nāvēs solvērunt. Postquam ex terrā Ēpirō vidēbantur, Coponius, classis princeps quae erat ad urbem Dyrrachium, eās

oppugnāre temptāvit. Sed māgnā fortunā Auster incrēbuit; ita Calēnī nāvēs onerāriæ servābantur. Neque vērō ille ob eam causam sē recēpit, sed labōre nautārum tempestātem superāre temptābat. Calēnus Antōniusque studiō Coponī perterriti sunt; quā causā ad locum quī proximus erat in Ēpirī litore properāvērunt. Hic locus ab Āfricō, sed nōn ab Austrō, erat tūtus. Māgnū tempestāte periculum eīs fuit, sed Auster māximā fortunā hōc ip.ō tempore in Āfricum sē vertit. Ita ex omnibus periculīs servāti sunt.

Sed periculum Coponī classī Āfricō erat māgnū. Nāvēs eiūs ad ūnam numerō XVI inter-ivērunt, et ex māgnō numerō nautārum pars tempestāte interfecta est; pars ā militibus Calēnī servāta est.

### 197.

Calenus, who was at the city Brundisium, at the first opportunity hastened with his fleet to the coast of Epirus. Coponius, the admiral of the fleet of Pompey at the town Dyrrhachium, tried to attack him, but was kept off by the heavy weather. Nevertheless<sup>1</sup> he terrified Calenus, who went to a place upon the coast, Nymphaeum, unprotected from the south wind, which was then blowing. He was for this reason<sup>2</sup> in great peril. But the wind luckily changed to the wind from the west-south-west, from which he was protected, because he was near<sup>3</sup> the shore, where<sup>4</sup> there were hills. Thus he disembarked<sup>5</sup> his troops and set them in camp.

<sup>1</sup> tamen.

<sup>2</sup> causa.

<sup>3</sup> prope.

<sup>4</sup> ubi.

<sup>5</sup> See 176, end of first paragraph.

## LESSON XXXIII.

### 198.           FOURTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of this declension ending in **-us** are **masculine**; those ending in **-ū** are **neuter**. (But see 10, 3, 4.)

*a.* But **domus**, *house*, and **manus**, *hand*, or *band (of men)*, are **feminine**.

### 199.

**Cursus**, m., *a running, speed.*

**Cornū**, n., *horn, wing (of an army).*

#### SINGULAR.

NOM.	Cursus	Cornū
GEN.	Cursūs	Cornūs
DAT.	Cursuī, -ū	Cornū
ACC.	Cursum	Cornū
ABL.	Cursū	Cornū
VOC.	(Cursus)	(Cornū)

#### PLURAL.

NOM.	Cursūs	Cornua
GEN.	Cursuum	Cornuum
DAT.	Cursibus	Cornibus
ACC.	Cursūs	Cornua
ABL.	Cursibus	Cornibus
VOC.	(Cursūs)	(Cornua)

a. **Domus**, *house*, has also forms of the Second Declension. See 472.

b. Decline together **māgnus exercitus**, *large army*; **sua manus**, *his hand*; **parvum cornū**, *small horn*.

**200.**

## ALLIED WORDS.

Habituate	Itinerant	Multiplication	Partiality	Prohibit
Hostility	Locate	Militia	Populate	Suburb

**201.** CAESAR ATQUE CLASSIS POMPEÏ.—VI.

Omnēs cōpiās Antōnius in castris conlocāvit, quārum erat summa legiōnēs IV, et equitēs DCCC, atque id nūntiis Caesari nūntiāvit. Sed Caesari longum flūmine erat iter, atque Pompēius clam et nocte ex castris ā flūmine Apsō ad Antōnium māgnis itineribus contendit. In idōneō locō prope castra Antōni cōpiās conlocāvit suōsque omnēs in castris continuit ignēsque prohibuit. “Quoniam meōs militēs Antōnius nōn videt iter ad Caesarem habēbit. Eum in itinere oppūgnābō.” Ita dixit. Tamen haec per Graecōs Antōniō nūntiāta sunt. Ille per nūntiōs Caesarem monuit, et in castris suās cōpiās tenēbat. Caesar celeriter ad eum vēnit.

Pompēius ex eō locō ex-ivit, omnibusque cōpiis ad locum Asparigium vēnit atque ibi idōneō locō castra conlocāvit. Caesar prope castra Pompēi sua castra conlocāvit.

FĪNIS.

**202.**

Caesar was surpassed in number of soldiers by Pompey, still, because he had legions which had fought in many battles against<sup>1</sup> the Gauls, he was not attacked by the latter, very many of whose legions were new. The friends of Pompey were eager to fight. (119, N. 1.) At length<sup>2</sup> their counsel prevailed, and a battle was fought at the place Pharsalia, in Greece.

<sup>1</sup> *contrā*.<sup>2</sup> *tandem*.

**203.****WORD-LIST FOR REVIEW.**

fortūna  
inopia

annus  
proelium

ad  
ex, ē  
quoniam

parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus  
properō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus  
temptō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus  
prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus  
teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus

reliquus, -a, -um	summus, -a, -um	suus, -a, -um
classis	nox	agmen
collis	obses	flūmen
eques	pars	iter
homō	pēs	litus
hostis	pedes	tempus
labor	princeps	
legiō	regiō	omnis, omne
miles	urbs	
nāvis	virtūs	

**204.** Translate these words :

obsidum	hominum	regiōnum
classibus	equitēs	labōris
legiōnēs	itinere	principem
militis	virtūtēs	pede
parti	tempore	peditis
urbem	hostis	agmina
nocte	litoribus	flūmine

## LESSON XXXIV.

### THIRD CONJUGATION. E VERBS.

**Regō** (stem *rege-*), *rule*.

Principal Parts, **regō, regere, rēxī, rectus.**

**205.** Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of **regō**. (482.)

*a.* Compare the forms of **regō** with those of **amō** and **moneō**. Wherein are they alike, and wherein do they differ? Concentrate your attention upon the **differences**.

**206.** 1. Regunt, regēbant, regent. 2. Regis, regēbās, regēs. 3. Regitur, regēbātur, regētur. 4. Regēbantur, regēbāris, regēbāmus. 5. Regeris, regimus, regī. 6. Regit, reguntur, regēris. 7. Reget, regimur, regere. 8. Regēbat, regēmus, regite. 9. Regēmur, regimini, rege.

**207.**

ALLIED WORDS.

Data	Magnanimous	Tempt
Invulnerable	Multipliable	Tenancy
Liberal	Omniscient	
Locality	Population	

**208.**

PISŌ AQUITĀNUS.

An incident from Caesar's Gallic campaigns.

Nostrōs equitēs, qui nōn parāti erant, Germānōrum equitēs subitō oppūgnāvērunt. Nostri ad agmen legiōnum fūgērunt.

In eō proeliō cum Germānis ex equitibus nostris interfecti sunt LXXII; in his vir summā virtūte, Pīsō Aquitānus, cūius avus in suā terrā rex fuerat et amīcus ab nostrō senātū appellātus erat.

Hic in proeliō frātrī, quī ab hostibus superābātur, auxilium dedit, et eum servāvit; sed ipsiūs equus vulnerātus est. Ipse diū fortiter sē dēfendit, sed tandem graviter vulnerātus est et ita interfectus est. Id ēius frāter, quem ille servāverat, procul vidit: ex equō in hostēs ūnus properāvit atque interfectus est.

**209.** 1. These men will bravely defend every one who will hasten into their camp.

2. This man's grandfather was king, but he himself will not rule over the people.

3. We shall defend the walls, and you shall bring the weapons.

4. These Germans will hasten on horseback with the messenger to the winter camp, and will defend him if<sup>1</sup> they are attacked.

5. The horsemen of Caesar are Gauls, whom the Germans easily<sup>2</sup> conquer. If the Gauls shall dare<sup>3</sup> to fight with him, he will defend the lands which he has seized by means of these very Germans whom he is now attacking with the aid of the Gauls.

6. If you are ready, attack the men on the wall.

<sup>1</sup> sī.

<sup>2</sup> facile.

<sup>3</sup> audeō.

## LESSON XXXV.

### THIRD CONJUGATION—CONTINUED.

**210.** Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, active and passive, of **regō**. (482.)

*a.* Compare these forms with the forms of **amō** and **moneō**.

**211.** 1. *Rēxit, rēxerat, rēxerit.* 2. *Rectus erit, rectae erimus, rectus eram.* 3. *Recta sum, rectum esse, rēxerint.* 4. *Rectus est, rectī sumus, rēxerant.* 5. *Rēxistis, rēxerō, rectae estis.* 6. *Rēxerimus, rēximus, rectus erō.* 7. *Rēxi, rēxistī.*

**212.** *a.* Have all the verbs of the first conjugation so far learned, excepting **dō (dedī)**, principal parts which are alike?

*b.* Are **teneō (tentus)** and its compounds the only verbs of the second conjugation so far learned whose principal parts are unlike those of **moneō**?

*c.* How many verbs of the third conjugation can you find whose principal parts are like those of **regō**?

### **213.**

### ALLIED WORDS.

Belligerent	Missile	Suburban
Depart	Navigate	Tenacity
Mediterranean	Nocturn	
Missive	Numeration	



## 214. A FIGHT AROUND A HILLOCK.

Quō annō Pompēius **exercitum** classemque parat Caesar cum **exercitū** in Hispāniā contrā **exercitum** Afrānī, lēgāti Pompēi, bellum **gerit**. Ad urbem Ilerdam proelia **gerunt**. Est inter hanc urbem et proximum collem māgnū, ubi castra Afrānius habet, **parvus** collis. Ex urbe Afrānius frūmentum ad suum exercitum portat.

Caesar dicit, "Ad hunc **parvum** collem cohortēs **mittam**, itaque ā frūmentō **exercitus** Afrānī prohibēbitur." Legiōnēs III ex castris **mittit**, et in idōneis locis prope **parvum** collem conlocat, quibus ex locis antesignānī cursū **parvum** collem occupāre temptant. Sed hōc quae prō castris sunt Afrānī cohortēs vident, et brevī itinere ad **parvum** collem celeriter **mittuntur**. Proelium **geritur**, et quoniam primō in **parvum** collem Afrānī cohortēs contendunt nostrī superantur. Auxilium iis **mittēbātur**, sed tandem omnēs sē ad signa legiōnum recēpērunt. Eā causā legiō quae in eō cornū conlocāta erat locum nōn tenuit atque in proximum collem sē recēpit. Omnēs legiōnēs III perterrēbantur, atque in eās milītēs Afrānī ācritē contendēbant. Legiōnem Caesar **mīsit**, quae auxilium dedit. Proelium bene **gessērunt**, nam milītēs Afrānī sē ad urbem recēpērunt et sub mūrō proelium **gessērunt**.

## 215. WORD-LIST.

<b>exercitus</b> , -ūs, m., <i>army</i> .	<b>gerō</b> , <b>gerere</b> , <b>gessī</b> , <b>gestus</b> ,
<b>parvus</b> , -a, -um, <i>small</i> .	<i>to be engaged in doing</i>
<b>mittō</b> , <b>mittere</b> , <b>mīsī</b> , <b>missus</b> ,	<i>(something), to do, or carry</i>
<i>to send.</i>	<i>on.</i>

216. At the time when Pompey was preparing an army in Epirus the chiefs of the Roman armies in Africa and Spain and the people of Massilia, a city in Gaul, were all fighting against Caesar and his generals. Caesar sent Curio with III new legions to

Sicily and Africa, but went<sup>1</sup> himself to Spain, because his forces in that land were opposed to a large and good army.

Curio went to Sicily, and from there carried a part of his army across<sup>2</sup> by fleet to Africa, where<sup>3</sup> he fought with Varus, who was one of Pompey's friends.

<sup>1</sup> *ivit.*

<sup>2</sup> Use *trāns-portāre.*

<sup>3</sup> *ubi.*

## LESSON XXXVI.

217.

PULLŌ ET VORĒNUS.

Erant in legiōne viri m̄ximā virtūte, centuriōnēs, Titus Pullō et Lūcius Vorēnus, quī contrōversiās continenter dē suā virtūte habēbant. Ex hīs Pullō cum Gallis, quī hiberna legiōnis occupāre temptābant, ex vallō ācritter pūgnābat. “Quid dubitās, Vorēne?” dixit, “Hōc tempus dē nostris contrōversiis iūdicābit,” et statim extrā vallum ex-īvit. Ad partem ubi hostēs multī sunt visī contendit.

Nōn Vorēnus sē in vallō continuit, sed quoque extrā hiberna ex-īvit. Pullō tēlum in hostēs misit, atque hominem ex Gallis interfēcit. In eum omnēs hostēs tēla misērunt. Trānsfixum est scūtum Pullōni et tēlum in balteō dēfixum est. Āvertit hic cāsus vāginam, et gladium m̄gnā difficultāte ē-dūxit. Eum tum hostēs celeriter oppūgnābant, sed Vorēnus vēnit et illi auxiliium dedit. Ad hunc sē ā Pullōne omnēs Galli vertērunt. Gladiō pūgnam bene gessit Vorēnus atque hominem eōrum interfēcit. Sed cum m̄gnō studiō in reliquōs contendit, atque in locum inferiōrem concidit. In eum rūsus hostēs celeriter contendēbant, sed Pullō ei auxiliium dedit.

Postquam ita pūgnāvērant summā cum virtūte sē intrā hiberna recēpērunt.

218. (Use whatever words you think will best express the sense of the following lines, which are taken from Macaulay's “Battle of Lake Regillus.” Do not try to translate it word for word.)

But fiercer<sup>1</sup> grew the fighting  
 Around<sup>2</sup> Valerius dead,  
 For Titus dragged<sup>3</sup> him by the feet  
 And Aulus by the head.<sup>4</sup>  
 "On, Latins,<sup>5</sup> on," quoth Titus;  
 "See (how) the rebels<sup>6</sup> fly."<sup>7</sup>  
 "Romans, stand firm," quoth Aulus,  
 "And win this fight, or<sup>8</sup> die."<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Nominative m. and f. *ācrior*, n. *ācrius*. <sup>2</sup> *circum*. <sup>3</sup> *trahere*.  
<sup>4</sup> *caput*. <sup>5</sup> *Latīnus*, -ī. <sup>6</sup> i.e. Romans. <sup>7</sup> *to yield*, *cēdere*. <sup>8</sup> *aut*.  
<sup>9</sup> Imperative of "*to die*" is *morimini*.

## LESSON XXXVII.

### THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

**219.** There are three degrees of comparison: the **positive**, the **comparative**, and the **superlative**.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
	(ending <b>-ior</b> )	(ending <b>-issimus</b> )
<i>lātus</i> ( <i>lāto-</i> ) (43), <i>wide</i> .	<i>lātior</i> , <i>wider</i> .	<i>lātissimus</i> , <i>widest</i> .
<i>levis</i> ( <i>levi-</i> ) (167)	<i>levior</i> , <i>levius</i>	<i>levissimus</i> , <b>-a, -um</b>
<i>vēlōx</i> ( <i>vēlōci-</i> ) (167)	<i>vēlōcior</i> , <b>-ius</b>	<i>vēlōcissimus</i> , <b>-a, -um</b>

*a.* How is the comparative formed from the positive in these examples? How is the superlative formed?

This is the **regular form of comparison** for all adjectives excepting those in **-er**.

### **220. Adjectives in -er.**

<i>liber</i> ( <i>libero-</i> ) (474), <i>free</i> .	<i>liberior</i> , <i>freer</i> .	<i>liberrimus</i> , <i>freest</i> .
<i>acer</i> ( <i>ācri-</i> ) (160)	<i>ācrior</i> , <b>-ius</b>	<i>ācerrimus</i> , <b>-a, -um</b>

*a.* Notice that **adjectives in -er** have the ending **-rimus** in the **superlative**. Comparing of Adjectives.

### **221. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES.**

#### *Paradigm.*

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
NOM.	<i>altior</i>	<i>altius</i>	<i>altiōrēs</i>	<i>altiōra</i>
GEN.	<i>altiōris</i>	<i>altiōris</i>	<i>altiōrum</i>	<i>altiōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>altiōrī</i>	<i>altiōrī</i>	<i>altiōribus</i>	<i>altiōribus</i>
ACC.	<i>altiōrem</i>	<i>altius</i>	<i>altiōrēs, -īs</i>	<i>altiōra</i>
ABL.	<i>altiōre, -ī</i>	<i>altiōre, -ī</i>	<i>altiōribus</i>	<i>altiōribus</i>
Voc.	( <i>altior</i>	<i>altius</i> )	( <i>altiōres</i>	<i>altiōra</i> )

a. The **comparatives** of all adjectives (except **plus**, 229) are **declined** like **altior**.

b. The **superlatives** are all declined like **bonus** (474).

Compare and decline in the comparative: **longus**, **grātus**, **novus**, **miser**, **celer**, *swift*, **atrōx**, *cruel*.

## 222.

## EXAMPLES.

<p><b>Mōns est altior quam</b> <b>collis,</b> <b>Mōns est altior collī,</b></p>	}	<p><i>A mountain is higher</i> <i>than a hill.</i></p>	<p><b>quam.</b></p>
---	---	--	---------------------

Observe that in the first sentence, where **quam** is used, **collis** is in the **same case** as **mōns**; but in the second, where **quam** is omitted, the **ablative collī** is used.

RULE.—The **ablative** is used with **comparatives** in the sense of **than** when **quam** is omitted.

## 223.

## EXAMPLES.

**Mūrus est altior,** *The wall is rather (or too) high.*

**Mūrus est altissimus,** *The wall is very high.*

These sentences illustrate meanings sometimes given to the comparative and superlative.

## 224.

1. Quis mūrum longiōrem **quam** Rōmæ vidit?
2. Quis longiōrem mūrum **quam** mūrum Rōmæ vidit?
3. Hōstēs in altissimō collī agmine Caesaris perterrēbantur.
4. Quis nigriōrem equum eō habet?
5. Hōc iter ad hiberna Caesaris est brevissimum.
6. Collēs altissimī cum labōre ab ācerimō hoste tenēbantur.
7. Padus est flūmen longius Arnō.
8. Peditēs quōs dux in altō collī tenuit hostium cōpiās ab eō prohibēbunt.

9. Arma quibus Rōmānī ā mūrō prohibēbantur gladii longissimī erant.

10. Terra Gallia altiōra flūmina **quam** Italia habet.

11. Prohibētur ab urbe reliquis civibus.

12. Nōn facile ab urbibus peditēs hostium prohibēbat.

13. Novissimum agmen hostium in altō colle visum erat.

14. Estne hīc equus nigerrimus?

**225.** SAVING THE STANDARD.

Ibi in silvā Lūcius Cotta lēgātus ā Gallis interfectus est cum māgnā parte militum. Reliqui sē ad hiberna recēperunt, ex quibus Lūcius Petrosidius, aquilifer, māgnō numerō hostium extrā vallum premēbātur. Aquilam intrā vallum pro-iēcit; ipse māximā virtūte prō hibernis pūgnābat atque tandem interfectus est.

**226.** WORD-LIST.

**quam**, adverb used after an adjective or adverb in the comparative degree, *than*.

**227.** (Translate these sentences in two ways, where possible.)

1. The sword which the hostage gave to the horseman is longer than this one.

2. Who are more uncivilized than the Romans? The Gauls are more uncivilized than they, but most uncivilized of all are the Germans.

3. Diviciacus was the freest of the chiefs of the Haedui, because he had not given his children as hostages to their enemies.

4. The men upon the wall are fewer than those who are in this gate.

5. He placed his camp upon the highest of the hills.

6. Is this road to the camp shorter than that (one)?

7. The deepest river in Italy is the Padus.

8. Galba has a blacker horse than this horse,

## LESSON XXXVIII.

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES—CONTINUED.

**228.** The following adjectives form the **comparative** and **superlative irregularly** :

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
bonus, -a, -um, <i>good</i>	melior, melius	optimus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um, <i>bad</i>	pēior, peius	pessimus, -a, -um
māgnus, -a, -um, <i>large</i>	māior, maius	māximus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um, <i>much</i>	plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um
multī, -ae, -a, <i>many</i>		
parvus, -a, -um, <i>small</i>	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um

### 229.

DECLENSION OF **plus**, *more* (plural *more* or *many*).

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
NOM.	—	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
GEN.	—	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
DAT.	—	—	plūribus	plūribus
ACC.	—	plūs	plūrīs, -ēs	plūra
ABL.	—	plūre	plūribus	plūribus
VOC.	—	(plūs)	(plūrēs	plūra)

**230.** Some adjectives are compared by means of adverbs :  
**Idōneus**, *suitable*. **Magis idōneus**, *more suitable*. **Māximē idōneus**, *most suitable*.



## 231.

## ALLIED WORDS.

Castle	Habitué	Navigable	Pertinent	Subterranean
Collocate	Multifold	Numeral	Primeval	Tenacious

## 232.

1. Rōmāni hiberna māiora quam Galli conlocāverant.
2. Certum numerum militum in hibernis tenuit atque equitēs, quōrum erat māgnus numerus in Galliā, ex his regiōnibus **obtinēbat**.
3. Caesar minor nātū erat quam Pompēius.
4. Optimī militēs saepe fuērunt pessimī hominēs, sed Caesar vir melior erat atque ācerrimus princeps.
5. Optimōs amāmus atque perterrēmur ā pessimīs.
6. Melius est amārī quam perterrere, et nōn difficilius.
7. Quis hōrum puerōrum est aegerrimus? Hīc est aegrior illō.
8. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae.
9. Helvétii hāc ex parte **monte** altissimō **continentur**.
10. Hōc in collī peditēs **continēbantur**.
11. Reliquam partem cōpiārum in hōc locō **continet**.
12. Haec silva ab Helvétiorum regiōne ad terrās Dacōrum **pertinet**.
13. Mārcus est māior nātū et altior Sextō.
14. Mūri hōrum hibernōrum sunt longiōrēs quam mūri erant superiōre annō.

## 233.

## WORD-LIST.

**ob-tineō, obtinēre, obtinūī, obtentus**, *to possess, obtain.*

**con-tineō**, etc., *to hold together.* Passive also, *is bounded* (geographical term).

**per-tineō**, etc., *to extend.*

**mōns, montis**, m., *mountain.*

**234.**

1. Because the Helvetians possessed a land which was bounded by very high mountains, which extended in all directions. they tried to seize a new country more suitable to a people who were very brave.

2. The largest city of Italy is Rome.

3. Because his men were fewer than those of the enemy he hastened by very long marches to the mountains and placed a camp in a suitable place upon a rather high hill.

4. Most men have more courage than skill.

## LESSON XXXIX.

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.—CONTINUED.

**235.** Six adjectives in **-lis** are compared as follows :

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
facilis, -e, <i>easy.</i>	facil <b>ior</b> , facili <b>us</b>	facill <b>imus</b> , -a, - <b>um</b>
difficilis, -e, <i>hard.</i>	difficil <b>ior</b> , difficil <b>ius</b>	difficill <b>imus</b> , -a, - <b>um</b>
similis, -e, <i>like.</i>	simil <b>ior</b> , simil <b>ius</b>	simill <b>imus</b> , -a, - <b>um</b>
dissimilis, -e, <i>unlike.</i>	dissimil <b>ior</b> , dissimil <b>ius</b>	dissimill <b>imus</b> , -a, - <b>um</b>
humilis, -e, <i>low.</i>	humil <b>ior</b> , humil <b>ius</b>	humill <b>imus</b> , a, - <b>um</b>
gracilis, -e, <i>slender.</i>	gracil <b>ior</b> , gracil <b>ius</b>	gracill <b>imus</b> , -a, - <b>um</b>

**236.** The following form their **superlative** irregularly :

exterus, <sup>1</sup> <i>outward.</i>	exterior, <i>outer.</i>	extrēm <b>us</b> , extim <b>us</b> ,	} <i>outermost,</i> } <i>last.</i>
inferus, <sup>1</sup> <i>below.</i>	inferior, <i>lower.</i>	infim <b>us</b> , im <b>us</b> ,	} <i>lowest.</i>
posterus, <sup>1</sup> <i>following.</i>	posterior, <i>later.</i>	postrēm <b>us</b> , postum <b>us</b> ,	} <i>last.</i>
superus, <sup>1</sup> <i>above.</i>	superior, <i>higher.</i>	suprēm <b>us</b> , sum <b>us</b> ,	} <i>highest.</i>

<sup>1</sup> Not used in the Nominative Singular Masculine.

**237.** The following have **no positive**, and form the comparative and superlative from other parts of speech :

citerior, <i>hither.</i>	citimus, <i>hither most.</i>
interior, <i>inner.</i>	intimus, <i>inmost.</i>
prior, <i>former.</i>	primus, <i>first.</i>
propior, <i>nearer.</i>	proximus, <i>next.</i>
ulterior, <i>further.</i>	ultimus, <i>furthest, last.</i>

a. Do you remember any prepositions or adverbs from which these might be derived ?

**238.** ALLIED WORDS.

Barbarity	Laborious	Omnipresence
Content	Major (1, a)	Summit
Enumerate	Navigation	
External	Obtainable	

**239.** 1. Hās urbēs in regiōnibus trāns flūmen **pīmās** obtinuerat.

2. **Extrēmum** oppidum Allobrogum est **proximumque** Helvétiorum terris Genāva.

3. Erat in Galliā ulteriōre ūna legiō.

4. **Pīmā** nocte **summus** collis **obtinēbātur**.

5. Complūrēs ex gladiīs qui in mūris sunt **obtinēre** temptābat.

6. Belgae **pertinent** ad **īferiōrem** partem flūminis.

7. Aquitānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad **montēs** et eam partem Oceanī quae est ad Hispāniam **pertinet**.

8. Galliam citeriōrem **montēs** Alpēs **continuērunt**.

9. Facile est tēla gladiōsque **obtinēre**.

10. Illud iter, quod inter altissimōs **montēs** atque flūmen erat, **obtinuit**.

11. Ex eā urbe silva ad Helvétios **pertinuit**.

12. Urbem litus **continēbat**.

13. Ab hōc locō collis **pertinuit** ad **proximum** montem.

14. Multī puerī māgnis capitibus nōn sunt **superiōrēs** cōnsiliō.

## 240.

## WORD-LIST.

bonus, -a, -um, *good*; melior, melius, *better*; optimus, -a, -um, *best*.

māgnus, māior, māximus, *large, larger, largest*.

multus, plūs, plūrimus, *much, more, most*.

exterus, exterior, extrēmus or extimus, *outward, outer, outermost*.

īferus, inferior, īfimus or īmus, *below, lower, lowest*.

posterus, posterior, postrēmus, *following, later, last*.

superus, superior, summus or suprēmus, *above, higher, highest*.

———— prior, *former*; prīmus, *first*.

—— propior, *nearer*; proximus, *nearest, next*.

## 241.

1. Pompey's fleet, whose chief was a man of the greatest courage, was larger than Caesar's. Pompey had more soldiers than Caesar, but the majority of the latter's soldiers were better than even <sup>1</sup> the best soldiers in Pompey's legions.

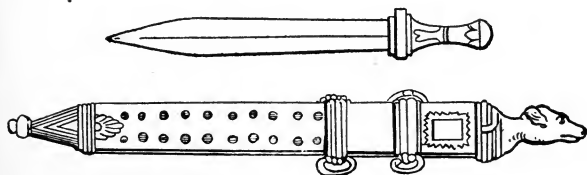
2. On the following night he placed his baggage upon the top of the hill.

3. The Romans had a more difficult march than they had last year, because the enemy were holding the hills which were next to the shortest <sup>2</sup> of the roads.

4. The last hill held by the enemy was the highest.

<sup>1</sup> etiam.

<sup>2</sup> brevis, -e, *short*.



GLADIŪ RŌMĀNĪ.

## LESSON XL.

### FORMATION OF ADVERBS.

**242. Many Latin adverbs** are formed from **adjectives**.

**o** STEMS (43).

(ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.)

ADJECTIVE.	STEM.	ADVERB.
longus, <i>long</i> .	longo-	longē, <i>far</i> .
miser, <i>wretched</i> .	misero-	miserē, <i>wretchedly</i> .

These change the **o** of the stem to **ē**.

**i** STEMS.

(ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.)

brevis, <i>short</i> .	brevi-	breviter, <i>briefly</i> .
ācer, <i>eager</i> .	ācri-	ācritter, <i>eagerly</i> .
sapiēns, <i>wise</i> .	sapienti-	sapienter, <i>wisely</i> .

These add **ter** to the stem.

*a.* But notice that stems in **-nti** (**sapienti-**) drop **ti**.

**243.** The **accusative** and the **ablative neuter** of the **adjective** are also sometimes used as **adverbs**.

multus, <i>much</i> .	multum, <i>much</i> .
facilis, <i>easy</i> .	facile, <i>easily</i> .
primus, <i>first</i> .	primō, <i>at first</i> .
subitus, <i>sudden</i> .	subitō, <i>suddenly</i> .

**244.**

ALLIED WORDS.

Ameliorate.	Optimist	Superiority
Extremity	Plurality	Supremacy
Majority	Primitive	
Omniscience	Priority	

## 245. PŪGNA PHARSALICA.

The battle of Pharsalia was probably the decisive battle in the struggle between Caesar and the Senate (170), although it did not seem so at the time to the enemies of the former, and was not so fiercely contested as the later battles in Africa and Spain. It thus probably ranks as one of the decisive battles of the world. (See also 467.)

## 246. I.

Pompēius, quī castra in - colle habēbat, ad - infimās - partēs - montis legiōnēs conlocābat. "In - hōc - locō **facile** victōriam obtinēbō," dixit. Caesar, quoniam numerō multīs - partibus erat inferior, suōs - milītēs continēbat, et in - idōneō - locō legiōnēs conlocābat.

Pompēi - amicis, lēgātis - tribūnisque, māgnū proelī - studium erat, sed id eī nōn grātum erat. Tandem studiō - amicōrum superātus - est, pūgnāreque - parāvit.

Interim Caesar castra movēre - constituit, atque signum dedit, iamque illi quōs primōs in - agmine conlocāverat in - portis - castrōrum erant. Sed eō - ipsō - tempore legiōnēs - Pompēi ab - infimis - montis - partibus in - campum movēbant et pūgnāre - parāre - vidēbantur. Id Caesar vidit atque oppūgnāre - parāvit.

Pompēius in - sinistrō - cornū legiōnēs - II conlocāverat: in - eō - locō ipse erat. Medium - locum Scīpiō cum - legiōnibus - Syriacis tenēbat. Ūna - legiō cum - **cohortibus** - Hispānis in - dextrō - cornū erat - conlocāta. Numerō **cohortēs** CX erant. Hae erant milia XLV. Reliquās **cohortēs** VII in castris castellisque conlocāverat. Omnēs equitēs, quī optima arma habēbant, sagittārii funditōresque, in sinistra parte erant.

Caesar ūnam legiōnem in dextrō cornū conlocāvit. **Co-**hortēs LXXX habēbat, quae summa erat milia XXII. **Co-**hortēs II in castris erant. Ipse contrā Pompēium erat.

## 247.

## WORD-LIST.

**cohors, cohortis**, f., *cohort*, the tenth part of a legion.

**longē**, *far*; **bene**, *well*; **facile**, *easily*.

**multum**, or **multō**, *much*; **subitō**, *suddenly, unexpectedly*.

**celeriter**, *quickly*.

## 248.

The last hill which the enemy were holding was suddenly attacked by the Romans at night. This hill was rather high, and the most of those soldiers who first attacked, because they were in a lower position than the enemy, were wounded by the latter, whose swords were much longer than theirs. But the tribune greatly surpassed the enemy in skill. He easily seized the next<sup>1</sup> hill, which was not far distant<sup>2</sup> and much higher than that which the enemy were holding. Because of this the enemy quickly retreated<sup>3</sup> to a place near their (own) camp.

<sup>1</sup> 237.

<sup>2</sup> To be distant, **ab-esse**.

<sup>3</sup> 178, N. 2.



## LESSON XLI.

249.

COMPARING OF ADVERBS.

POSITIVE.	MODELS. COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
âcritèr, <i>eagerly</i> .	âcrius.	âcerrimē.
miserē, <i>wretchedly</i> .	miserius.	miserrimē.
bene, <i>well</i> .	melius.	optimē.
male, <i>badly</i> .	pēius.	pessimē.
multum, <i>much</i> .	plūs.	plūrimē.
—	minus, <i>less</i> .	minimē.
—	magis, <i>more</i> .	māximē.

a. What case-ending of the **adjective** is used to form the **comparative** of the **adverb**?

b. How is the **superlative** formed from the **superlative** of the **adjective**? (Cp. 219.)

c. Form adverbs from these adjectives, and compare them: **aeger** (**aegro-**), *sick*; **prūdēns** (**prūdenti-**), *wise*; **liber** (**libero-**); **similis** (**simili-**), *like*; **levis** (**levi-**), *light*.

250.

ALLIED WORDS.

Benefit	Mountain	Primer
Celerity	Optimistic	Omnivorous
Extreme	Pertain	
Facile	Plural	

PŪGNA PHARSALICA.—II.

251. Quoniam equitēs - Pompēi contrā - dextrum - cornū complūrēs erant, **celeriter** cohortēs - VI Caesar monuit, "Cum - equitibus pugnātōte. Capita - eōrum tēlis vulnerāre - temptātōte; ita celeriter perterrēbuntur." Ex - his - equitibus multi erant adulescentēs pulcherrimis - comis, civēs - Rōmāni.

Pūgnae - signum ab - utrōque datum - est. Nostrī - militēs

in - legiōnēs - Pompēi properāvērunt. Primum tēlis, deinde gladiis, pūgnāre - contendērunt. Equitēs - Pompēi ā - sinistrā - parte eō - tempore in - nostrōs - equitēs contendēbant. Nostrī sē recēpērunt. Equitēs Pompēi, hōc ācriōrēs, ā parte apertā nostrōs militēs superāre temptāvērunt. Tum Caesar suis VI cohortibus signum dedit. Hae equitēs subitō oppūgnāvērunt.

Hāc causā Pompēi equitēs perterriti sunt, atque fugā montēs altissimōs petēbant. Omnēs sagittārii funditōrēsque interfecti sunt. Tum nostrae VI cohortēs Pompēi militēs qui in sinistrō cornū pūgnābant circumiērunt. Illi fugā sē servāre contendērunt, quoniam ex duābus(297) partibus ā nostris oppūgnābantur.

## 252.

## WORD-LIST.

**bene, melius, optimē, well, better, best.**

**celeriter, celerius, celerrimē, quickly, more quickly, most quickly.**

**facile, facilius, facillimē, easily, more easily, most easily.**

**longē, longius, longissimē far, farther, farthest.**

**magis, maximē, more, most.**

**multum, } plūs, plūrimum, much, more, most, mostly.**  
**multō, }**

**minus, minimē, less, least.**

## 253

## POMPEY'S PLAN OF ATTACK AT PHARSALUS.

Pompey said<sup>1</sup> to the leaders of his horsemen, "You will<sup>2</sup> of a sudden attack the horsemen who are opposite our left wing. Because you are more numerous and have better arms than they you will easily terrify them. Then (99. N. 2) you will quickly attack the foot-soldiers on their exposed flank.<sup>3</sup> They will at that time be fighting with our legions.

Because they will thus be attacked from two directions at one (125) time, they will become frightened and will hasten to save themselves by flight."

<sup>1</sup> dixit.<sup>2</sup> Imperative mood.<sup>3</sup> pars.

## LESSON XLII.

**254.**

### ALLIED WORDS.

Contention	Inferiority	Omnipotent
Contentment	Malcontent	Petition
Defense	Mountainous	
Facility	Nostrum	

**255.**

### PŪGNA PHARSALICA.—III.

Tum Pompēius in - sua - castra ex - equō **contendit**, atque iis quōs ad - portam conlocāverat dicit, “Castra **dēfendite** diligenter.” Castra ā - cohortibus, quae ibi conlocātae - erant, vērō diligenter **dēfenduntur**; multō ācrius ā - Thracibus - barbarisque - auxiliis. Nam qui ex - proeliō ad - castra milites **contendunt** magis reliquā - fugā sē servāre quam castra **dēfendere - petunt**. Tandem omnēs tēlis superantur, atque cum - ducibus centuriōnibus - tribūnisque - militum altissimum - montem quī ad - castra pertinet occupāre - **petunt**. Quoniam is - mōns est sine - aquā, locum quī prope - flūmen est tum occupāre - **petunt**.

Caesar partem suārum cōpiārum in castris Pompēi, partemque in suis castris conlocat, atque cum legiōnibus IIII ad hunc locum properat. **Nostrī**<sup>1</sup> labōre sunt dēfessi, et nox ad-est, tamen milites Pompēi nocte aquam **petere** prohibent. Paucī nocte fugā se servāre **petunt**; reliquī in dēditionem sē Caesari dant.

Signa ex proeliō ad eum portantur CLXXX et aquilae VIII.

Interim Pompēius ad litus **contendēbat** et nāve terram Aegyptum **petēbat** atque ad urbem Alexandriam vēnit. Ibi

<sup>1</sup> I.e. Caesar's.

rêx erat Ptolemaeus, puer quî mǎgnis cōpiis sorōrem Cleopatram in bellō superāre temptābat. Amicî hūius rēgis illis quî, ā Pompēiō vērunt gratissimē respondērunt; tamen Pompēium interficere **petēbant**. Ille ignorāns ex nāve ex-ivit, cum paucis suis et interfectus est.

FĪNIS.

**256.**

WORD-LIST.

noster, nostra, nostrum, *our*.

contendō, contendere, contendī, contentum, *to strive, to hasten, sometimes, to fight.*

petō, petere, petivī, petitum, *to seek, beg, demand.*

dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēsum, *to defend.*

**257.**

HOW CAESAR THWARTED POMPEY'S PLAN AT PHARSALUS.

Caesar saw the horsemen of Pompey opposite his own right end (251). He quickly said to the leaders of VI cohorts, "If (146, N. 5) yonder horsemen shall get the best of the horsemen who will be defending our left end, you will defend the rest of our soldiers."

Pompey's horsemen easily terrify Caesar's horsemen, and then<sup>1</sup> eagerly hasten against the exposed flank<sup>2</sup> of the legion. Those VI cohorts suddenly attack them with their swords, and greatly terrify them. They then attack the legions of Pompey upon their unprotected end. Thus Caesar's soldiers overcame Pompey by means of the very plan by which Pompey tried to overcome them.

<sup>1</sup> **tum.**

<sup>2</sup> See 251, second paragraph.

## LESSON XLIII.

### THIRD CONJUGATION VERBS IN IŌ.

**capiō, faciō, fugiō, iaciō** and their Compounds.<sup>1</sup>

**258.** Learn all the tenses of the Indicative, the Present Imperative, and the Present Infinitive, Active and Passive, of **capiō** (484).

Compare these tenses of **capiō** with the tenses of **regō**, and note the differences.

**259.** 1. Capiēbātis, capiēbāminī. 2. Capit, capiēbat, capiet. 3. Capiunt, capiēbant, capient. 4. Capior, capis, caperis. 5. Capiēbar, capimur, cēpi. 6. Capiar, capimus, capere. 7. Cape, captae erāmus, captus sum. 8. Cēperāmus, cēperis.

a. Inflect in the same way **faciō**, *make*, and **fugiō**, *flee*.

**260.**

#### EXAMPLES.

**Quīnque annōs bellum gerēbātur.** *War was carried on for five years.*

**Collis centum pedēs ab-est.** *The hill is a hundred feet distant.*

a. The accusative **annōs** expresses duration of time, the accusative **pedēs** extent of space. They answer the questions **how long?** and **how far?**

Accusative of Time  
and Space.

**261. RULE.**—Duration of Time and Extent of Space are expressed by the Accusative.

<sup>1</sup> These are the most common of the verbs of this class.

## 262.

## CAESAR ET AFRĀNIUS.

The following is the account of the closing operations of Caesar's first campaign in Spain (compare 170), before the battle of Pharsalia (245). The incident given in 214 occurred during this campaign.

Afranius, the general who is opposing Caesar, has decided to leave the region of Ilerda, since his supplies are almost exhausted, and marching southward to make a fresh stand in a more favorable region. If Caesar can gain possession of a pass over the mountains which Afranius must cross, he can prevent this movement and perhaps starve his foes into a surrender. The camp of Afranius is situated between Caesar's camp and the pass. The two camps are in sight of each other, and it seems impossible for Caesar to seize the pass in advance of Afranius.

## 263.

## I.

Caesar cum omnibus cōpiis ex castris ex-īvit, māgnōque circuitū sine certō itinere exercitum **dūxit**. Hōc Afrānī militēs vidērunt et laetissimī erant. "Vidē," **dixērunt**, "inopiā frūmenti Caesar fugit atque ad urbem Ilerdam rūsus suōs militēs **dūcit**." Sed paulātīm ad dextram agmen Caesar **dūcēbat** et brevī tempore primī superāverant regiōnem eōrum castrōrum et iam prope montem fuerant. Tum vērō celeriter omnēs cōpiās ex castris Afrānius **dūxit**, rectōque ad montēs itinere contendit.

Exercitum Caesaris viārum difficultātēs, Afrānī cōpiās **equitātūs** Caesaris tardābant. Ad montem prius agmen Caesaris vēnit atque ibi contrā exercitum Afrānī militēs conlocāti sunt. Tum vērō et ab **equitātū** novissimum agmen Afrānī exercitūs premēbātur, et ante sē legiōnēs Caesaris vidēbat. Ad collem Afrānius exercitum **dūxit** atque ibi legiōnēs suās conlocāvit.

## 264.

## WORD-LIST.

equitātus, -us, m., *cavalry*.

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, *to lead*.

dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus, *to say*.

## 265.

The enemy tried to seize the gate<sup>1</sup> by night, and thus to lead their forces into the city, but the leader of the men who were in the city quickly hastened to the gate. He wounded a few of the enemy, and thus frightened the rest. They did not attack him during the remainder of the night. During the whole of the next day,<sup>2</sup> with a few men, he was keeping the enemy away from the gate. At length,<sup>3</sup> by night, the enemy, wearied, retreated.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> porta.

<sup>2</sup> 268.

<sup>3</sup> tandem.

<sup>4</sup> sē recēpit.

## LESSON XLIV.

### FIFTH DECLENSION.

**266.** Nouns of this declension are **feminine**, except **diēs**, which is **masculine**.

*a.* **Diēs** is sometimes feminine in the singular.

**267.** Very few nouns belong to this declension, but some of those which do are frequently used, especially **aciēs**, **diēs**, and **rēs**.

**268.** **diēs**, *day*.  
stem **diē**.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
NOM.	diēs	NOM.	diēs
GEN.	diēī	GEN.	diērum
DAT.	diēī	DAT.	diēbus
ACC.	diem	ACC.	diēs
ABL.	diē	ABL.	diēbus
VOC.	(diēs)	VOC.	(diēs)

**269.** **ALLIED WORDS.**

Abduct	Conductor	Dictum
Amiable	Continue	Prediction
Conduce	Defender	
Conduct	Diction	

**270.** **CAESAR ET AFRĀNIUS.—II.**

Ex eō locō, ubi suum exercitum conlocāverat, IV cohortēs in eum montem quī ibi erat altissimus Afrānius misit. Hunc māgnō cūrsū hārum cohortium occupāre petivit. Hās



cohortēs equitātus Caesaris ex omnibus partibus oppugnāvit. Quārum militēs in cōspectū utrōrumque exercituum interfecti sunt.

Quoniam equitātus ita **proelium commiserat**, atque **rem** ita bene gesserat, ad Caesarem celeriter lēgātī, centuriōnēs, tribūnique militum vēnērunt. Dixērunt, “In cōspectū totius exercitūs Afrānī hae cohortēs interfectae sunt. Perterretur eius exercitus; proelium cum tuis legiōnibus nōn sustinēbit. Cūr dubitās **proelium committere**? Celeriter victōria nobis erit.”

Hōc cōsiliū suōrum tamen Caesarī nōn grātum fuit. **Proelium nōn commisit.** “**Proelium nōn committam,**” dixit, “nam in pugnā meī militēs vulnerābuntur. Sine pugnā hanc **rem** bene geram, nam ā frūmentō Afrānium prohibū.”

Cōsiliū Caesaris militibus nōn grātum fuit, tamen paulum ex eō locō ex-ivit.

Tum Afrānius in castris suōs conlocāvit.

### 271. WORD LIST.

**rēs, reī, f.,** *thing, state of affairs.*

**committō, committere, commīsī, commissum,** *to bring together.* With **proelium,** *to begin the battle.*

### 272.

After<sup>1</sup> the whole of Gaul had been overcome by Caesar, the Gauls again (81, N. 2) fought with him. They harassed<sup>2</sup> him for a long time, and kept him from (securing) grain. At length<sup>3</sup> he attempted to retreat (cp. 178, N. 2) into the province.<sup>4</sup> The Gauls had very many horsemen, and did not hesitate to begin battle with Caesar. But Caesar had already<sup>5</sup> sent secretly<sup>6</sup> to the Germans,<sup>7</sup> who sent him a great number of horsemen. After the Gauls had begun the battle the German cavalry was sent against them, and quickly brought the matter to a successful issue.

<sup>1</sup> 185, N. 2.    <sup>2</sup> 289.    <sup>3</sup> 265, N. 3.    <sup>4</sup> **prōvincia.**    <sup>5</sup> **iam.**  
<sup>6</sup> **clam.**    <sup>7</sup> Not dative.

## LESSON XLV.

### SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE.

**273.** Learn the present and imperfect subjunctive of **sum** (486) and of the active and passive of **amō** (480), **moneō** (481), **regō** (482), and **capiō** (484).

*a.* In the same way inflect these tenses of **parō**, **pūgnō**, **videō**, **perterreō**, **dūcō** and **mittō**.

### 274.

#### THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. This Mood is used **chiefly in Subordinate clauses.**

*a.* All subordinate clauses, however, do not take the Subjunctive.

*b.* The Latin Subjunctive has no relation to the English Subjunctive, nor should it be thought of as being generally similar to the English Potential ("might," "would").

2. The so-called Present and Imperfect tenses have exactly the **same meaning** in nearly all subordinate clauses. They denote **incompleted action**, past, present, or future.

**275. Incompleted action** represents the action of the verb in the subordinate clause as **still going on** at the time to which the sentence refers. The "time to which the sentence refers" is the time denoted by the **main verb** of the sentence.

Incompleted  
Action.

*a.* The English and Latin **indicative** tenses of incompleted action are :

*I was carrying, Portābam* (Latin Imperfect).

*I am carrying, Portō* (Latin Present).

*I shall be carrying, Portābō* (Latin Future).

**276.** Never think of the Present Subjunctive as denoting incompleted action in present time only, like the Present Indicative, or of the Imperfect Subjunctive as denoting incompleted action in past time only, like the Imperfect Indicative. The names "Present" and "Imperfect" are very misleading in this respect.

RULE FOR USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

**277.** If the main verb of the sentence denotes present or future time, use the present subjunctive.

If the main verb of the sentence denotes past time, use the imperfect subjunctive.

**278.**

EXAMPLES.

*Sē parant ut pūgent, They prepare themselves that they may fight (so that they may fight, so as to fight, in order that they may fight, in order to fight, to fight, for the purpose of fighting).*

*Sē parābant ut pūgnārent, They prepared themselves that they might fight, etc.*

*Lēgātōs mittunt nē oppidum oppūgnētur, They send envoys in order that the town may not be attacked, that the town may not be attacked, lest the town be attacked.*

*Lēgātōs mīserunt nē oppidum oppūgnārētur, They sent envoys in order that the town should not be attacked.*

Clauses  
Expressing  
Purpose.

a. Notice that the clauses introduced by **ut** or **nē** express the **purpose** or **intention** of the subjects of the principal clauses.

b. Notice that **ut** introduces a **positive**, **nē** a **negative**, purpose.

c. Notice that the verbs in the clauses expressing **purpose** are in the **subjunctive**, and conform to the rule. (277.)

d. Notice the various expressions by which **ut** and **nē** may be translated.

**279. RULE.**—**Purpose** is expressed by **ut** and **nē** with the **subjunctive**.

a. The **infinitive** is **never** to be used in Latin to express **purpose** as it is in English.<sup>1</sup>

**280.**

## ALLIED WORDS.

Adduce	Induce	Reduce
Deduce	Introduce	Traduce
Deduct	Introduction	
Educe	Produce	

**281.**

1. Ad silvam properābit ut victōriam obtineat.
2. Dēfessī prīncipēs labōrāvērunt ut urbs dēfenderētur.
3. Ut via dēfenderētur ad portam urbis properāvimus.
4. Bonī prīncipēs bene pūgnāvērunt ut victōriam habērent.
5. Porta ā paucīs hominibus dēfendētur ut mūrus ā plūribus teneātur.
6. Nē pater dēfessus sit, puerī eī celeriter auxilium dabunt.
7. Nē peditēs vulnerentur equitātus ut eōs dēfendat properat.
8. Multās cohortēs dūcet ut mūrum oppūgnet.
9. Nē nocte labōrēmus contendēmus.
10. Ex urbe cōpiās dūcere temptat ut eīs auxilium mittat.
11. Ex castrīs prīncipem prohibet ut ipse tūtus sit.
12. Hōc locum occupat ut celeriter ad suōs contendat.
13. Multās cōpiās habet et bellum geret.
14. Lēgātōs mittam ut auxilium petam.
15. Cōpiās in castrīs tenet, sed brevī tempore peditēs ad montem dūcet, et hostem oppūgnābit.
16. Pūgnātis ut liberōs dēfendātis.

<sup>1</sup> In classical Latin exceptions to this rule are very rare, and are confined almost entirely to the works of Vergil and other poets.

**282.**

1. He will lead these troops into the winter camp, so that he may defend it easily.

2. He led a cohort into the winter camp, in order that he might defend it easily.

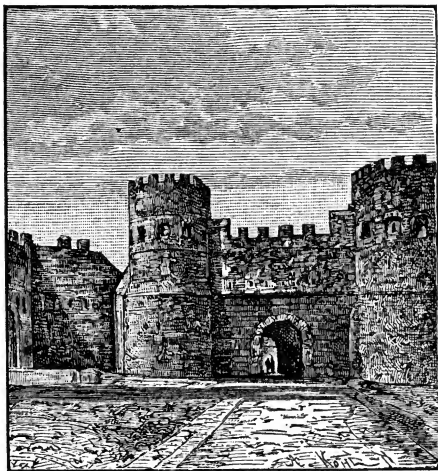
3. He sent help to the cohort, in order that it might quickly seize the hill.

4. He is preparing great forces, lest he be overcome.

5. He will hasten to the town, lest he be wounded.

6. He left<sup>1</sup> his baggage in the winter camp, so that his soldiers should not have a hard time (86) from want of horses.

<sup>1</sup> 317.



<sup>1</sup> RŌMAE URBIS PORTA OSTIENSIS.

## LESSON XLVI.

### 283. PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

#### FIRST PERSON.

**Ego, I.**

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM.	ego	nōs
GEN.	meī	nostrūm or nostri
DAT.	mihi	nōbīs
ACC.	mē	nōs
ABL.	mē	nōbīs

#### SECOND PERSON.

**Tū, thou.**

NOM.	tū	vōs
GEN.	tuī	vestrum or vestri
DAT.	tibi	vōbīs
ACC.	tē	vōs
ABL.	tē	vōbīs

#### THIRD PERSON.

**Suī, of himself, herself, itself.**

NOM.	—	—
GEN.	suī	suī
DAT.	sibi	sibi
ACC.	sē or sēsē	sē or sēsē
ABL.	sē or sēsē	sē or sēsē

a. Notice that **suī** is **reflexive**; that is, like **suus** (191), it refers only to the **subject of the sentence**, or (sometimes) **of the clause**.

b. **Is, ea, id** (100) and sometimes **hīc** and **ille** (93) are used for the **personal pronoun** of the **third person** when **not reflexive**.

## 284.

## EXAMPLES.

**Ego sum altus, tū es parvus, I am tall, you are small.**

**Omnēs sē** (or **sēsē**) **laudant, They are all praising themselves.**

**Amīcus mēcum manēbit, My friend will stay with me.**

**Quis vestrūm sē nōn recēpit? Who of you did not retreat?**

a. Notice in the first sentence that the subjects **ego** and **tū** are expressed. They are **usually omitted** except for emphasis or contrast.

b. The personal pronouns of the first and second persons often have a **reflexive** sense: **Tū tē laudas, Thou praisest thyself. Omnēs nōs laudāmus, We are all praising ourselves.**

## 285.

## POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

**meus, -a, -um, my, mine.**

**tuus, -a, -um, thy, thine, your (sing.), yours.**

**suus, -a, -um, his, hers, its, their, theirs. (Reflexive 191.)**

**noster, -tra, -trum, our, ours.**

**vester, -tra, -trum, your (plu.) yours.**

a. **Tuus** refers to **one** person:

**Mārce, tuum amīcum vidī, et tuōs equōs habuit, Marcus, I saw your friend, and he had your horses.**

**Vester** refers to **more than one** person:

**Militēs, vestrōs tribūnōs videō, sed ubi est vester lēgātus? Soldiers, I see your lieutenants, but where is your general?**

b. Notice that the word “*your*” translates both **tuus** and **vester**.

## 286.

## EXAMPLES.

**Nōs quī militēs sumus eum laudāmus, sed vōs, quī lēgātī estis, culpātis, We, who are soldiers, praise him, but you, who are generals, blame him.**

a. Notice that the first **quī**, because it refers to **nōs**, is the subject of a verb in the **first** person, **sumus**; and that the second **quī**, which refers to **vōs**, is the subject of **estis**, a verb in the **second** person.

## 287.

## ALLIED WORDS.

Aqueduct	Dictionary	Predicate
Captor	Express	Predictive
Commit	Impress	
Compress	Repress	

## 288.

## CAESAR ET AFRĀNIUS.—III.

Caesar militēs in montibus inter Afrāni castra castraque sua conlocāvit. Posterō **diē** principēs exercitūs Afrāni, quoniam in complūribus partibus **premēbantur**, perturbāti sunt, atque de his rēbus cōsiliū **cēperunt**. In cōnciliō eis nūntiātur, “**Quī aquam** petunt ab equitātū Caesaris **prementur**.” Quam ob rem in viā quae ad **aquam** pertinuit equitēs **legiōnāriās**que cohortēs conlocāvērunt, et posterum **diem** vallum ex castris ad **aquam** dūcere temptāvērunt ut intrā vallum **aquam** peterent atque nē ab equitātū **premerentur**. Hōs diēs tamen inopiā frūmenti **premēbantur**; **aquam** aegrē petēbant. Frūmenti cōpiam parvam **legiōnāriī** militēs habēbant, sed auxiliis nōn fuit, et eā causā māgnus eōrum numerus omne hōc tempus ad Caesarem veniēbant, atque sē ei dabant. Tandem Afrānius ad oppidum Ilerdam rūsus properāre temptāvit, et ex castris ex-ivit. Caesar equitātum mīsīt, ut novissimum agmen **premerētur**; ipse ex castris **legiōnāriōs** militēs dūxit, ut equitātū auxiliū daret.



## 289.

## WORD-LIST.

aqua, aquae, *water*. diēs, diēī, m. and f., *day*.  
 legiōnārius, -a, -um, *belonging to a legion, legionary*.  
 premō, premere, pressī, pressus, *to press to harass*.  
 capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, *to take*.

## 290.

(Use whatever words you think will express the sense of the following lines, which are taken from Macaulay's "*Battle of Lake Regillus*."')

## THE CHALLENGE.

Mamilius spied Herminius  
 And dashed across<sup>1</sup> the way;  
 " Herminius, I have sought thee  
 Through many a bloody day.  
 One of us two, Herminius,  
 Shall never<sup>2</sup> more go home.<sup>3</sup>  
 I will lay on for<sup>4</sup> Tusculum,  
 And lay thou on for Rome."

## 291.

## REVIEW WORD-LIST.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
bonus, -a, -um	melior, -ius	optimus, -a, -um
exterus, -a, -um	exterior, -ius	extrēmus, -a, -um
inferus, -a, -um	inferior, -ius	infimus, -a, -um
māgnus, -a, -um	māior, -ius	māximus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um	— plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um
parvus, -a, -um	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
posterus, -a, -um	posterior, -ius	postrēmus, -a, -um
superus, -a, -um	superior, -ius	summus, -a, -um (suprēmus, -a, -um)
	prior, -ius	prīmus, -a, -um
	propior, -ius	proximus, -a, -um

<sup>1</sup> *Crossed*, trāns-ivit. <sup>2</sup> 119, N. 4. <sup>3</sup> Perhaps these two lines might be paraphrased, "His city shall never more see one of us." <sup>4</sup> prō.

obtinēō	obtinēre	obtinuī	obtentus
contineō	continēre	continūi	contentus
pertineō	pertinēre	pertinuī	————
capio	capere	cēpi	captus
committō	committere	commisi	commissus
contendō	contendere	contendi	contentus
dēfendō	dēfendere	dēfendi	dēfensus
dico	dicere	dixi	dictus
dūcō	dūcere	dūxi	ductus
gerō	gerere	gessi	gestus
mittō	mittere	misi	missus
petō	petere	petivi	petitus
premō	premere	pressi	pressus

aqua, aquae

bene  
celeriter

cohors, cohortis

facile

mōns, montis

longē

equitātus, -ūs

multum, multō

exercitus, -ūs

subitō

rēs, rei

legiōnārius, -a, -um

noster, nostra, nostrum

contrā

suus, -a, -um

## LESSON XLVII.

### READING LESSON.

292.

#### ALLIED WORDS.

Aquarium	Fact	Position
Capture	Impetuous	Postern
Deduction	Induction	
Diurnal	Inexpressible	

293.

#### CAESAR ET AFRĀNIUS.—IV.

Equitātus noster in novissimum agmen exercitūs Afrānī **impetūs faciēbat**. Nōn multum spatium Afrānius eō diē iter **fēcit**, atque quoniam **impetibus** equitātūs premēbātur montem altum cēpit ibique castra **ponere** vidēbātur. Postquam Caesar castra **posuerat** equitēs in agrōs ivērunt ut frūmentum caperent atque equīs suīs darent. Afrānius rūsus subito iter **facere** temptāvit. Sed Caesar cum legiōnāriīs ē castrīs in eum properāvit; in castrīs impedimenta atque paucās cohortēs reliquit. Celeriter equitātus quoque vēnit. Ācritter **impetum** in novissimum agmen **fēcit**. Complūrēs legiōnārii militēs, etiam centuriōnes, interfecti sunt.

Tum vērō exercitus Afrānī rūsus castra **posuit**. Haec castra in locō quī longē ab aquā ā-fuit **posita sunt**. Caesar **impetum** nōn **faciēbat**, sed eō diē tabernācula in suīs castrīs nōn **posuit**, ut celeriter in eōs **impetum facere** parātus esset. Posterum diem in castrīs suōs Afrānius tenēbat. Primā nocte ut aquam peteret nōn ex-ivit, sed proximō diē paucās cohortēs in castrīs reliquit atque omnēs reliquās cōpiās ad

aquam dūxit. Tamen eam diem frūmentum ex agris ut equis darent capere nōn temptāvit.

**294.**

## WORD-LIST.

**impetus, impetūs, m.,** *an attack.*

**faciō, facere, fēcī, factus,** *to make, do.*

**ponō, pōnere, posuī, positus,** *to place.*

**295.**

1. For many days he tried to take the town.
2. He takes the sons of the chiefs as hostages, in order that they may not wage war upon him.
3. He placed his camp upon the highest hill, in order not to be attacked.
4. Caesar hurries to Spain to attack Afranius (279).
5. The cavalry attacked the rear rank of the army, in order that it should not march a great distance upon that day.
6. He went out of the camp in order to lead his forces to water.
7. He kept his men in the winter quarters for many days, lest the enemy should see them (279).
8. At what time will you see him ?

## LESSON XLVIII.

### NUMERALS.

**296.** Learn the cardinals (479).

**297.**

**Ūnus, one.**

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum
GEN.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus
DAT.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī
ACC.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum
ABL.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō
Voc.	(ūnus	ūna	ūnum)

**Duo, two.**

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	duo	duae	duo
GEN.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
DAT.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
ACC.	duōs, duo	duās	duo
ABL.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
Voc.	(duo	duae	duo)

**Trēs, three.**

	M. AND F.	NEUT.
NOM.	trēs	tria
GEN.	trium	trium
DAT.	tribus	tribus
ACC.	trēs	tria
ABL.	tribus	tribus
Voc.	(trēs	tria)

Plural of **Mille, thousand.**

	milia
	mīlium
	mīlibus
	mīlia
	mīlibus
	(mīlia)

*a.* The declension of **ūnus** has been referred to before (125).

**298.** The cardinals from **quattuor** to **centum** are indeclinable.

The hundreds (excepting **centum**) are declined like the plural of **bonus**.

**Centum** and **mille** in the singular are indeclinable.

## 299.

## EXAMPLES.

**Sex** militēs sunt in castrīs, *Six soldiers are in the camp.*

**Ā** sex militibus oppugnātus est, *He was assailed by six soldiers.* Use of Numerals.

**Trīgintā** tribus militibus dōna dedit, *He gave gifts to thirty-three soldiers.*

**Mille** equitēs ad eum contendunt, *A thousand horsemen hasten to him.*

**Quīnque** mīlia equitum ad eum contendunt, *Five thousand horsemen hasten to him.*

a. Notice in the fourth sentence that **mille** (the singular) takes the same construction as the other cardinals (like **sex** in the first), but that **mīlia** (the plural) in the fifth sentence is a (neuter) **noun**, followed by the **genitive**.

b. This is called a **partitive genitive**, because it denotes the whole of which a part is taken. Other examples of this genitive, which has been frequently used in preceding exercises, are **pars frūmentī, paucī militum**. Partitive Genitive.

c. Notice in the third sentence that a declinable cardinal is inflected even when it stands with an indeclinable one.

## 300.

## ALLIED WORDS.

Century	Dual	Trio
Circumnavigate	Factor	Unit
Co-operation	Repression	
Deposit	September	

## 301.

## CAESAR ET AFRĀNIUS.—V.

Caesar interim vallum circum castra exercitūs Afrāni dūcere temptābat. Diēs duōs haec **opera** cōsiliaque geruntur; tertiō diē māgna pars **operis** perfecta erat. Illi ut Caesarem ex **opere** prohibeant signum dant **aciemque instruunt**. Caesar ex **opere** legiōnariōs militēs re-vocat **aciemque instruit**.

**Aciēs** quam Afrānius **instrūxerat** legiōnum quinque erat; Caesaris primam **aciem** cohortēs ex quinque legiōnibus tenēbant.

Nōn amplius pedum milibus duōbus ab illōrum castris castra Caesaris **ab-sunt**, cūius spatī partēs duās **aciēs** quae **instructae sunt** tenent; tertia ad impetum militum relinquitur. Facilis fuga militibus Afrāni est. Hāc causā Caesar pūgnāre nōn temptat. Afrānius quoque nōn pūgnāre sed ex **opere** legiōnariōs Caesaris prohibēre temptat. Ad noctem **aciēs** ita continentur.

## 302.

## WORD-LIST.

**aciēs, aciēi**, f., *line of battle.*    **instruō, instruere, instrūxi**,  
**opus, operis**, n., *work.*            **instructum**, *to construct.*  
**ab-sum, ab-esse, ā-fui**, *to*        **Of troops, to draw up.**  
*be distant or absent.*

**303.** The Gauls were attacking the winter camp for ten days. There were only<sup>1</sup> three cohorts in it, and the gate which was the nearest<sup>2</sup> to the enemy was defended by not more than two hundred soldiers. Thirty of these were killed, and a hundred and five wounded. The legate himself hastened to the gate with twenty-two more soldiers, of whom five were wounded in a short time. Nevertheless<sup>3</sup> he defended the gate with much bravery. The enemy retreated (178, N. 2) by night. During this day five hundred Romans and two thousand of the enemy were killed (141, N. 6).

<sup>1</sup> tantum.<sup>2</sup> 237.<sup>3</sup> tamen.

## LESSON XLIX.

**304.** Learn the first twenty-one ordinals (479).

**305.**

### ALLIED WORDS.

Cent	Minority	Summit
December	Mural	Unify
Duel	Pugnacious	
Decimal	Quart	

**306.** CAESAR ET AFRĀNIUS.—VI.

Posterō diē Caesar vallum dūcere rūsus parāvit ; illi trāns flūmen quod nōn longē ā-fuit cōpiās dūcere temptābant. Celeriter Caesar Germānōs equitumque partem trāns flūmen misit, ut ab hāc rē eōs prohibēret.

Tandem, quoniam itā ab omnibus rēbus prohibēbantur, atque māgna aquae frūmentique inopia erat, tam premēbantur ut<sup>1</sup> conloquium peterent. Datus est obsidis locō Caesarī filius Afrāni.

In hōc conloquiō Afrānius sē suumque exercitum in dēditionem Caesarī dedit.

**307.**

Pompey led one hundred and ten cohorts and seven thousand horsemen from his camp to wage battle with Caesar at the place Pharsalia. He had forty five thousand men. He himself with two legions held one wing (199). Caesar led eighty cohorts from his camp, and had twenty five thousand men. He himself, with the soldiers of one legion, was opposite<sup>2</sup> Pompey. In this battle two hundred of Caesar's soldiers, with thirty centurions,<sup>3</sup> were killed (141, N. 5). Of Pompèy's soldiers more than ten thousand were killed.

<sup>1</sup> 308,

<sup>2</sup> contrā,

<sup>3</sup> 321



## LESSON L.

**308.**

EXAMPLES.

**Mīlitēs ita fortēs sunt ut impetum faciant,** *The soldiers are so brave that they make an attack.*

**Mīlitēs ita fortēs fuērunt ut impetum facerent,** *The soldiers were so brave that they made an attack.*

**Is miles ā tribus Gallīs oppūgnātus est, ut vulnerāretur,** *This soldier was attacked by three Gauls, so that he was wounded.*

Subjunctive  
of Result.

**Hīc miles tam fortis est ut nōn ā Gallīs perterreātur,** *This soldier is so brave that he is not frightened by the Gauls.*

*a.* Notice that the clauses introduced by **ut** and **ut nōn** all express a **result**.

*b.* Notice that a **negative result** is introduced by **ut nōn**. How is a negative purpose introduced?

**309.**

**RULE.**—The **result** of an action is expressed by the **subjunctive** with **ut** and **ut nōn**.

**310.**

ALLIED WORDS.

Aquatic	Inductive	Operate
Caption	Instruction	Press
Exposition	Interdiction	
Factory	Impetuosity	

**311.**

1. Miles dēfessus erat ut ad urbem Ilerdam nōn mitterētur.
2. Quis nostrōrum perterrētur ut nōn aciem instruat?
3. Contendit ad silvās ut nōn ab hostibus caperētur.
4. Contendit ad urbem nē ab hostibus capiātur.

5. Nōs urbem tam diligenter dēfendimus ut nōn capiātur.
6. Flūmen vigintī pedēs altum fuit.
7. Caesar quinquāgintā sex annōs vixit.
8. Mōns decem milia pedum altus est.
9. Quis nātus est centēsīmō annō ante Christum nātum? Nōne Caesar est?

10. Ut in Caesarem bellum gerant hominum milia centum Bellovacī habent, atque ex eō numerō sexāgintā dabunt. Suesiōnēs oppida habent duodecim, et hominum quinquāgintā dabunt, quindecim milia Atrebātēs, Ambianī decem milia, Morinī vigintī et quinque milia, Menapii septem milia, Velocassi decem milia, Caerōesī cum reliquis ad quadrāgintā milia.

#### SUMMA HELVĒTIŌRUM.

11. Omnium rērum summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum milia duo centum et sexāgintā trēs; Tulingōrum milia trigintā sex; Latovicōrum quattuordecim; Rauracōrum trēs et viginti; Bōiōrum duo et trigintā; ex his qui arma habēbant ad milia nōnāgintā duo.

#### 312.

1. He worked all the time, so as to have plenty of grain.
2. He works with eagerness, so that he has a supply of grain.
3. He defended himself with the greatest bravery, so that he was not captured.
4. He sent help to the town, so that it was not taken.
5. He will send footmen to the camp, so that it may not be taken.
6. He sent a legion to the winter camp, so that it should not be taken.
7. He sent a cohort to the hill, so that it was not taken by the enemy.
8. The legions are so many that the legate placed some of them in one camp, and some in another (126).

## LESSON LI.

**313.** Learn the indicative, the present infinitive, and the present and imperfect subjunctive of **possum** (486).

*a.* To inflect the present, imperfect and future of **possum** prefix **pot-** to the forms of **sum**, remembering that **pot** becomes **pos** before **s**, and that the **es** of **essem** is dropped in the imperfect subjunctive.

*b.* The perfect, pluperfect and future perfect drop the **f** of **fuī**, etc.

### 314.

#### ALLIED WORDS.

Barbarian	Military	Sign
Cogent	October	Unite
Decimate	Relinquish	
Impossible	Republic	

### 315.

#### BACULUS CENTURIŌ.

During Caesar's wars in Gaul (170) the Eburones, a tribe living next to the Rhine, treacherously ambushed a Roman force of about six thousand men, which was wintering among them, and totally destroyed it. The incident described in 225 occurred during the fight.

The following summer Caesar attacked the Eburones with an overwhelming force. They did not attempt to resist, but took refuge in the woods and swamps. Caesar left his baggage in a camp at Aduatuca, and scattered his troops in small divisions over the country. But the Roman soldiers found it hard and dangerous work to hunt the Eburones from their hiding-places;

consequently Caesar announced that any of the neighboring Gauls or Germans who desired were free to aid him. He offered as inducement the slaves (or prisoners of war) and plunder (or herds and other property) which they might secure. The following narrative relates how this invitation to all the marauders of these wild regions almost brought disaster upon himself.

## 316.

## I.

Trāns flūmen Rhēnum ad Germānōs vēnit rūmor, “Omnes quī bellum gerere **possunt** ad **praedam** Eburōnum ā Caesare ē-vocantur.” **Cōgunt** equitum duo milia Sugambri, quī sunt Germānōrum proximī Rhēnō. Trāns-ivērunt Rhēnum nāvibus trigintā milibus passuum inf̄ra eum locum ubi pauci legiōnārii ā Caesare **relictī**. Eburōnum multōs quōs exercitus Caesaris fugā sē servāre **cōgēbat** māgnamque **praedam** cēpērunt.

Sed ūnus ex captivīs, “Quid vōs”; dixit, “hanc miseram capitis **praedam**? Fortunātissimī esse **poteritis**, nam celeriter contendere ad castra Aduatucam **potestis**, quō in locō omnēs suās fortunās exercitus Rōmānōrum **coēgit**, ut ibi māgnam **praedam** capere **possitis**. Militēs tam pauci sunt, ut in castris omnēs sē tenēre **cōgantur**, et centuriōnēs suōs dūcere extrā mūrōs nōn audeant.”

Laetissimē Sugambri suam **praedam relinquunt**, captivum esse ducem **cōgunt**, et ad castra Aduatucam contendunt.

## 317.

## WORD-LIST.

**possum, posse, potuī, to be able, can.**

**cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus, to collect, to compel.**

**relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relictus, to leave behind.**

**praeda. praedae, plunder.**

## 318.

I. He hastens with a small force to the winter camp to defend it (279).

2. Because of the lack of grain he was unable to keep together the troops which he had collected from all regions for the purpose of carrying on war.

3. They were greatly disturbed (321), so that they left their booty and hurried into the woods (309).

4. Is your foot or (218, N. 8) mine the smaller?

5. We will send the foot-soldiers to the hills, in order that they may not be harassed by the horsemen.

6. Are you able to collect the men who are in the fields?

7. I was compelled to hasten to your camp because I was unable to defend my own.

8. He sent five hundred soldiers with me,<sup>1</sup> so that I might be able to take the town (279).

<sup>1</sup> *mēcum.*

## LESSON LII.

### READING LESSON.

319.

#### ALLIED WORDS.

Instructor	Posse	Terrestrial
Impetus	Perturbation	Unification
Manufactory	Predatory	
Opulent (cp. <b>inopia</b> )	Proposal	

320.

#### BACULUS CENTURIŌ.—II.

Cicerō, quī princeps in castris erat, eō tempore quinque cohortēs frūmentī causā in proximōs agrōs miserat, quōs inter et castra ūnus collis erat, ut vērō paucī in castris essent, quōrum multī erant ex legiōnibus ā Caesare aegrī relictī.

Hōc ipsō tempore Sugambrōrum equitēs vērunt, atque subitō ā decumānā portā in castra contendere temptant. Nostri rē novā **perturbantur**, ac vix primum impetum cohors in statiōne sustinere poterat. Aegrē portās nostrī dēfēbant; reliqua loca mūrus ipse per sē dēfēdit.

Tōta castra **perturbantur**, atque **alius** ex **aliō** causam rēi petēbat. **Alius** dicēbat, “Iam castra capta sunt!” **alius**, “Caesar **interfectus est** atque barbari, victōriā laeti, vērunt.”

Erat aeger in castris relictus Publius Sextius Baculus, ac diem iam quintum cibum edere nōn poterat. Hic sine armis ex tabernāculō **ex-ivit**; vidit hostēs quī in portā cum paucis nostrōrum pūgnābant, cēpit arma ā proximis militibus atque ad portam contendit. Cum eō ivērunt **centuriōnēs** eius cohortis quae in statiōne erat.

Parvum tempus proelium sustinere poterant. Reliquit animus Sextium, qui graviter vulneratus est: aegre ab aliis centuriōnibus servatus est atque intra portam portatus est. Quoniam hoc spatium temporis virtute Baculi interpositum erat, reliqui tandem in muro et ad portam iverunt ut castra defenderent.

Interim cohortes quinque qui in agris fuerant ad castra venerunt. Germani tandem exiverunt et cum ea praeda quam in silvis reliquerant trans flumen Rhenum se reciperunt.

## FINIS.

## 321.

## WORD-LIST.

**centuriō, centuriōnis, m., centurion.** Each cohort was divided into three "maniples," and each maniple into two "centuries." Each century was commanded by a centurion. The centurions were all men who had been ordinary soldiers (**militēs**) and had been promoted because of bravery or efficiency. Each legion had 60 centuries, and each century contained from 60 to 100 men.

**inter-ficiō, inter-ficere, inter-fēcī, inter-fectus, to kill.**

**re-cipiō, re-cipere, re-cēpī, re-ceptus, to take back, to receive; se recipere, to retreat.**

**alius, alia, aliud, another (125, 126).**

**perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to disturb greatly, throw into confusion.**

## 322.

1. With much difficulty (217, line 12) he leads the men through (166, N. 2) the woods to the top of the mountain, in order that they may be able to see the cities, rivers, hills, and roads of all this region.

2. For three years he had been preparing to wage war, so that his cities should not be captured.

3. Caesar led the line of march to the nearest hill,

in order that there he might draw up the line of battle.

4. Because he has fewer soldiers than the Gauls he keeps them in camp, lest they be killed (279).

5. The leader said to his soldiers: "You are men who have fought well in many battles in Gaul, so that you are easily able to take yonder camp (309). I myself will lead you."

6. They are in difficulty from want of javelins, so that they are unable either<sup>1</sup> to make an attack or<sup>1</sup> to retreat (309).

7. Cannot you yourself give me the horse?

8. Some gave him a hundred, some fifty, hostages.

## LESSON LIII.

### FOURTH CONJUGATION. Ī-VERBS.

**Audiō** (stem **audi-**), *hear*.

Principal parts, **audiō**, **audire**, **audiṽi**, **auditus**.

**323.** Learn all the tenses, active and passive, of **audiō** (485). How do the forms of **audiō** differ from those of **regō** and **capiō**?

**324.** 1. Audit, audiēbat, audiet. 2. Audi, audire. 3. Audiunt, audiuntur. 4. Auditis, audiēbātis, audiētis. 5. Audiēbam, nē audirēs, audite. 6. Audiam, auditur, audiēbāmur. 7. Audiar, audimur, audiri. 8. Ut audirent, audiēbātur. 9. Ut audiās, audiētur.

**325.** Inflect **mūniō**, *fortify*, and **veniō**, *come*, like **audiō**.

**326.** PROELIUM MUNDÆ.<sup>2</sup>

Ad proelium Mundæ, quod postquam Pompēius interfectus erat in Hispāniā gestum est, Caesar cum eius filiis pūgnāvit.

<sup>1</sup> See **aut** in vocabulary.

<sup>2</sup> This anecdote is related by Plutarch, in his Life of Caesar. Its truth has been doubted.



Tam acriter pugnatum est ut de hoc proelio amicis Caesar diceret, "De victoria saepe pugnavi, sed de vita hoc uno tempore."

**327.**

## GALLI ET GERMANI.

̄Olim Germanos Galli virtute tam superaverunt ut ultrò cum eis bella gererent, et propter hominum magnum numerum agrique inopiam trans Rhenum coloniās mitterent. Itaque ea, quae fertilissima Germaniae sunt, loca circum Hercyniam silvam, Volcae Tectosages, qui Galli sunt, occupaverunt. Hi ad hoc tempus<sup>1</sup> his locis sese continent. Nunc a Germanis tam multis proeliis Galli sunt superati ut non se ipsi illis virtute pares existimare possent.

**328.**

1. He hastens from camp to make an attack (279).

2. He hastened to the winter camp, in order not to be attacked.

3. He tried to capture the baggage of the whole legion, so that he might be able to prevent the march by the lack of food.<sup>2</sup> He seized the baggage of eight cohorts, so that very many soldiers are in want of food. But our legate will send the cavalry to the fields, that he may thus obtain grain.

4. The Gauls once sent colonies across the river Rhine into Germany, so that they have held the most fertile parts of this country until the present time. Nevertheless (303, N. 3) they are not the equals of the Germans in number, or<sup>3</sup> in other respects,<sup>4</sup> so that the latter now wage war upon them of their own accord.

<sup>1</sup> That is, the time of Caesar.

<sup>2</sup> *cibus*, -i.

<sup>3</sup> *aut*.

<sup>4</sup> *res*.

## LESSON LIV.

## REVIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

**329.** Learn the perfect and pluperfect subjunctives and the perfect and future infinitives of all the model verbs.

Review the Use of Principal Parts (83).

Review carefully the Personal Endings (76) and Tense Signs (188).

**330.** Each verb has **three** stems; one for the **Present, Imperfect** and **Future** tenses; one for the **Perfect, Pluperfect** and **Future Perfect** tenses, **Active**; and one for the **same tenses** in the **Passive**. This is why the "**Principal Parts**" must be learned.

*a.* Do you see any reason, in the meanings of the tenses, why the stem of the Present, Imperfect and Future is different from that of the Perfect, Pluperfect and Future Perfect tenses? (Cp. 275, *a.*)

**331.** Every verb form in the Present, Imperfect and Future tenses contains some or all of these divisions: Stem, Ending, Conjugation (or Connecting) vowel, Tense sign; **nūnti-ā-ba-t, hab-ē-bi-mus, pet-e-nt.**

**332. Conjugation Vowel:** First Conjugation, **Ā**: **nūnti-At, nūntiĀbat; nūntiĀbit, nūntiĀret,** except in the Present Subjunctive, **nūntiĒt.** Second Conjugation, **E**: **habĒt, habĒbat, habĒbit, habĒat, habĒret.** Third Conjugation, variable. Fourth Conjugation, **I**, **audIt, audIēbat, audIet, audIat, audĪret.**

*a.* Notice that verbs in **iō** of the third conjugation have some forms like the fourth. Which are they?

**333. Tense signs: Imperfect Indicative, BA:** **nūntiā-BAt, habēBAt, petēBAt, capiēBAt, audiēBAt.**

**Future Indicative:** First and Second Conjugation, **bō**, **bi**, **bu-nt**.

The Third and Fourth Conjugations have the vowel **A** in the First person singular, and **E** in the other persons: **regAm**, **regĒs**, **audiAm**, **audiĒs**.

**Present Subjunctive:** First Conjugation, vowel **E**: **nūntiEm**. Other Conjugations, vowel **A**: **habeAm**, **petAm**, **capĭAm**, **audiAm**.

**Imperfect Subjunctive. RE:** **nūntiārĒs**, **habĕRĒs**, **petĕRĒs**, **capĕRĒs**, **audiRĒs**.

**334.** Personal Endings: Active, **ō** or **m** (*I*), **s** (*thou*), **t** (*he*), **mus** (*we*), **tis** (*you*), **nt** (*they*).

Passive, **r** (*I*), **ris** (*thou*), **tur** (*he*), **mur** (*we*), **minĭ** (*you*), **ntur** (*they*).

### 335.

*a.* What unexplained peculiarity is there in the imperfect indicative of the fourth conjugation?

*b.* Notice that the imperative and infinitive do not conform to these rules.

## LESSON LV.

### THE INFINITIVE.

**336.** We are accustomed to think of the **infinitive** as meaning "to make," "to do," etc., and nothing else, but the **Latin infinitive** really has **two meanings in English**. The words **eum mittere**, for instance, in one construction mean "to send him," and in another, "that he is sending."

### 337. The infinitive has two main uses:

I. It completes the meaning of a verb, as in English.

**Vult venīre**, *He wishes to come.*

**Mē interficere temptat**, *He is trying to kill me.*

I, *a*. It has been very frequently used thus in the preceding lessons. This construction is easily understood (155).

The perfect and future infinitive are rarely used in this construction.

I, *b*. CAUTION.—The infinitive by a similar usage in English expresses purpose.

**Venit ut mē videat,** *He comes to see me.*

The idea of **purpose** is expressed in **Latin** by the **subjunctive** with **ut** or **nē** (279).

## II. USE OF INFINITIVE IN INDIRECT STATEMENTS.

### EXAMPLES.

**Tū oppūgnās,** *You are attacking.*

**Urbs oppūgnāta est,** *The city has been attacked.*

**Tū oppūgnābis,** *You will attack.*

**Dicit tē oppūgnāre,** *He says that you are attacking.*

**Exīstimāmus urbem oppūgnātam esse,** *We suppose that the city has been attacked.*

**Cōgnōscō tē oppūgnātūrum esse,** *I know that you will attack.*

II, *a*. Compare the sentences in these two columns. The sentences in the second column contain **indirect statements**. What is an indirect statement?

II, *b*. Now compare each sentence in the second column with its translation. Notice that **tē oppūgnāre** is translated “*that you are attacking*”; **urbem oppūgnātam esse**, “*that the city has been attacked*”; **tē oppūgnātūrum esse**, “*that you will attack.*”

II, *c*. Notice that there is **no word** in the **Latin** to correspond to the English word “*that.*” The English word **that**, when used to introduce an indirect statement, **cannot be translated** into Latin.

It is very important that the pupil remember this fact.

**338.** Thus, after a verb denoting **mental action** (“to say,” “think,” “notice,” “learn,” etc.) the English usually uses the particle “that,” followed by a finite verb; for instance, “He knows that you are the person.”

The verb or verbs **introduced** by the English “that” are in Latin put in the **infinitive**.

These infinitives are called **infinitives in Indirect Statements**.

**339.** In the model sentences in 337 notice that not only are the verbs of the **direct statement** changed to **infinitives** in the **indirect statement**, but that the **nominatives** *tū* and *urbs* are changed to **accusatives**, *tē* and *urbem*, although in the English translation each still remains the subject of the same verb as in the Direct Statement.

These **accusatives** are said to be the **subjects** of the **infinitives** which follow them.

**340. RULE.**—The subject of the infinitive is in the **accusative**.

**341. RULE.**—Statements after verbs and other expressions of **saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving** are called **Indirect Statements**, and are expressed by the **infinitive with subject accusative**.

**342.**

1. Dicit sē tribūnum futūrum esse.
2. Dicit fugere Rōmānōs.
3. Eī nūntiant eōs arma capere.
4. Ē castris equitatum ē-dūci cōgnōscunt.
5. Existimat Cāium Fabium lēgatum cum legiōnibus duabus in castris relictum esse.
6. Cōgnōscit eōrum fugā reliquum equitatum esse perterritum.

7. Ad Aeduōs principēs duōs, quōs illi interfectōs esse exīstimant, cum equitibus mittit.

8. Caesar cōgnōscit summīs cōpiīs castra oppūgnāta esse; et multōs tēlis vulnerātōs esse. Summō studiō militum brevi tempore ad castra per-vēnit.

9. Ubiī, quī obsidēs dedērunt, dicunt nūlla auxilia ex suā civitāte in Trēverōs missa esse. Trēverī trāns flūmen Rhēnum lēgātōs mittunt. Lēgātī Germānis dicunt māgnam partem exercitūs nostrī interfectam esse, atque multō minōrem super-esse partem. Sed Germānī eis dicunt sē nōn bellō amplius fortūnam temptātūrōs esse.

10. Dicunt sē per hanc terram iter factūrōs esse. Lēgātus dicit sē eōs prohibitūrum esse. Illi dicunt sē aliud iter habēre nūllum.

11. Dicitis māgnum numerum militum ad tē celeriter ā tribūnō ad-dūcī.

12. Dicunt omnēs equitēs Aeduōrum interfectōs esse, et ipsōs fūgisse.

**343.** Turn the indirect statements in the first six sentences of 342 back into direct statements. If the perfect infinitive is used in the indirect statement, a tense denoting past time should be used in the direct statement; if a present infinitive, a tense denoting present time; if a future infinitive, a tense denoting future time.

## LESSON LVI.

## 344. THE TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE IN INDIRECT STATEMENTS.

Dicit	} tē oppūgnā-	}	} <i>He says</i>	} <i>that you attacked</i>		
Dicet					} <i>He will say</i>	} <i>(have attacked).</i>
Dixit						
	visse,					

Dicit	} urbem oppūgnā-	}	} <i>He says</i>	} <i>that the city was</i>		
Dicet					} <i>He will say</i>	} <i>(has been) at-</i>
Dixit						
	tam esse,					

Dicit	} tē oppūgnāre,	}	} <i>He says</i>	} <i>that you are attack-</i>		
Dicet					} <i>He will say</i>	} <i>ing.</i>
Dixit						

Dicit	} urbem oppū-	}	} <i>He says</i>	} <i>that the city is being</i>		
Dicet					} <i>He will say</i>	} <i>attacked.</i>
Dixit						
	gnārī,					

Dicit	} tē oppūgnātū-	}	} <i>He says</i>	} <i>that you will attack.</i>		
Dicet					} <i>He will say</i>	} <i>He said that you would attack.</i>
Dixit						
	rum esse,					

Dicit	} urbem oppūgnā-	}	} <i>He says</i>	} <i>that the city will be</i>		
Dicet					} <i>He will say</i>	} <i>attacked.</i>
Dixit						
	tum irī, <sup>1</sup>					

a. Notice the change in the English translation from *are* to *were* under the **present** infinitive, and *will* to *would* under the **future** infinitive.

b. Notice that these changes occur because the **English** takes the **point of view**, as to time, of the man who **quotes** the original speaker; that is, the point of view of **the one** who **speaks** or **writes** the **completed** sentence.

<sup>1</sup> More commonly **fore ut urbs oppūgnētur** (**oppūgnārētur**, after **Dixit**). **Fore** is equivalent to **futūrum esse** (486).

A little reflection will show that this is always the point of view of the present, or **present** time.

c. The **Latin**, unlike the English, **retains** the **point of view**, as to time, of the **person whose words are quoted**, that is, the point of view of the person denoted in the English sentences above by "He."

**345.** The **time** denoted by the **infinitive**, then, is the **same** as the time which was denoted by the **verb** of the **direct statement** whose place the infinitive has taken.

a. The direct statement, for instance, "**Vēnerat**," "*He had gone*," **always** takes a perfect infinitive when it is turned into an indirect statement; "**Veniō**," "*I am going*," a present infinitive; "**Veniēs**," "*You will go*," a future infinitive.

**346. RULE.**—The **tenses** of the **infinitive** in indirect statements denote past, present, or future, **relatively** to the **time** denoted by the **verb of saying**.

a. The tenses of **English** verbs in indirect statements are past, present, or future, relatively to present time.

**347.**

1. Eō tempore mūrum dēfendēbat.
2. Dixit sē mūrum dēfendisse.
3. Eō tempore dixit sē mūrum dēfendere.
4. Dicit eum eō tempore mūrum dēfendisse.
5. Caesar dixit sē saepe proelium commisisse.
6. Caesar dicit sē saepe proelium committūrum esse.
7. Caesar dixit sē proelium committere.
8. Caesar dicit eum proelium committūrum esse.
9. Nūntiātum est iter **facile** eum factūrum esse.
10. Caesarem **certiōrem facient** sēsē nōn **facile** ab oppidis hostēs prohibēre posse.

11. Haeduī ad Caesarem lēgātum mittunt ut eum **certiōrem faciant** paene in cōspectū exercitūs nostrī agrōs Helvétios occupāvisse.



12. Cōnsidius dicit montem ab hostibus tenēri ; id sē ā Gallōrum armis cōgnōvisse. Sed multō diē Caesar cōgnōscit montem ā suis tenēri.

13. Allobrogēs fugā sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt et eum certiorē fēcērunt sibi praeter agrōs nihil relictum esse.

14. Eōdem diē certior factus est hostēs sub monte impedimenta posuisse mīlia passuum ab ipsius castris octō.

## 348.

## WORD-LIST.

cōgnōscō, cōgnōscer, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus, *to learn about, to recognize, to examine.*

certus, -a, -um, *certain, trustworthy ; certiorē facere, to inform. facilis, facile, easy (167).*

## 349.

1. He learned that the enemy had made an attack.

2. He learns that his own men are holding the mountain.

3. He learned that his own men had held the mountain for two days.

4. He learns that the enemy will make an attack.

5. He learned that the enemy was making an attack.

6. He learned that an attack had been made by the cavalry.

7. He will learn that the enemy is fighting with great bravery

8. He learns that the soldiers are tired.

## LESSON LVII.

## 350. THE APPEAL OF THE GAULS TO CAESAR.

Postquam Caesar bellum cum Helvétis gessit, concilium tōtius Galliae diē certō habitum est. Ex eō conciliō principēs ad Caesarem veniunt atque ita eī nūntiant :

Galliae tōtius factiōnēs esse duās ; hārum alterius principātum tenēre Haeduōs, alterius Arvernōs. Hōs inter sē mul-

tōs annōs contendisse, atque ab Arvernīs et Sēquanīs Germānōs trāns Rhēnum flūmen ductōs esse. Cum hīs Haeduōs armīs contendisse; omnēs principēs et omnem equitātum in proeliīs interfectōs esse. Coāctōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare, et iūrāre sēsē neque obsidēs ā Sēquanīs neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō petitūrōs esse. Sed pēius Sēquanīs quam Hæduīs accidisse. Ariovistum, rēgem Germānōrum, in eōrum terram suum exercitum dūxisse, tertiamque partem agrī occupāvisse, atque nunc alteram partem tertiam capere temptāre. Hominem esse barbarum; nōn posse eius imperia diūtius sustinēri.

Caesarem ūnum Galliam omnem ab Ariovistō posse dēfendere.

## 351.

1. Caesar learned that the Arverni had brought Ariovistus with a large army into Gaul; that the Gauls had been compelled to give hostages to Ariovistus; that he was about to seize a very large part of Gaul and give it to the Germans; and that Caesar alone was able to defend the Gauls from him.

2. Change 350 from **coāctōs esse** to the end into a direct statement.

## LESSON LVIII.

## 352.

## EXAMPLES.

Timeō ut properet, } *I fear that he is not*

Timeō nē nōn properet, } *hastening.*

Subjunctive after  
Verbs of Fearing.

Timeō nē properet, *I fear that he is hastening,*

or, *I fear lest he be hastening.*

a. Notice that **verbs of fearing** are followed by **ut** or **nē** with the **subjunctive**.

b. Notice that **nē**, in this construction, can always be translated by "*lest*."

c. Notice that **nē** can also be translated by “*that,*” and that **ut** means “*that not.*” **Ut** and **nē** thus **seem** to exchange the meanings which they usually have.

**353. RULE.**—The **subjunctive** with **ut** or **nē** is used after **verbs of fearing**; **ut** meaning “*that not,*” and **nē** “*that*” or “*lest.*”

**354.**

1. Trēs annōs frūmentum parābant, ut in itinere cōpiam habērent.

2. **Timēmus** ut bonum cōsiliū capiās.

3. **Timēmus** nē mālum cōsiliū capiās.

4. Mōns erat altissimus, ut facile paucī eōs prohibēre possent.

5. **Timēbat** ut venīrem. **Timēbat** nē aeger essem.

6. Ut auxilium dare posset, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castris in aciē posuit.

7. Alius aliī in pūgnā auxilium dabat.

8. Ita celeriter **venērunt** ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et ad nostram aciē hostēs vidērentur.

9. Lēgātī **timuērunt** nē aqua tōtī exercitū dari nōn posset.

10. Dicit Nammēiūm prīncipem locum obtinuisse et nūntiāvisse sē per illam terram iter factūrum esse.

11. **Timēmus** nē noster exercitus celeriter nōn **veniat** et urbs ā prīncipibus hostium capiātur.

12. Caesar certior factus erat eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.

13. Ita diēs quīndecim iter fēcērunt, ut spatium inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum prīmum nōn amplius quīnque aut sex mīlibus passuum esset.

14. Partem suārum cōpiārum trāns flūmen dūcere temptāvērunt, eō cōsiliō, nē hiberna oppūgnārentur.

15. In conciliō optimum esse vidētur ad suam terram quemque **venire**, nē in aliōrum terris sed in suis pūgnent.

16. Quā rē erit ut tōtius terrae cōpiæ ab eō premantur.

17. In collibus legiōnariōs ponet, ut dē cōsiliis principum cōgnōscere possit.

18. Ut omnēs ūnō tempore in hostēs impetum facerent, ā proeliō suōs tenēbat.

19. **Timent** ut hostēs impetum faciant.

20. **Timuērunt** nē hostēs impetum facerent.

21. Legiōnariōs ex urbe dūxit ut hostis impetum faceret.

22. Legiōnariōs ad superiōrem locum dūcit nē hostēs impetum faciant.

23. Legiōnariōs ad locum superiōrem dūxit, ut hostēs impetum nōn facerent.

24. Hiberna nōn amplius quīnque milibus passuum ā flūmine ab-sunt.

**355.**

## WORD-LIST.

veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventus, *to come.*

timeō, timēre, timuī, —, *to be afraid, to fear.*

**356.**

1. He came to see you, but was afraid that you would not be able to see him.

2. He is afraid that you will not be able to see him, so that he has not come to see you (309).

3. They said that the enemy tried last night to seize the gate of the town, and wounded five men (341, 346).

4. They say that the fleet will attack his ships, but that his soldiers will easily defend themselves (341, 346).

5. He learns that the Germans will attack him, and is about to abandon this region, so that they may not be able to do<sup>1</sup> this (179, 346).

6. He is leaving this region, in order that the Germans may not be able to attack him (179).

7. He took possession of this hill and of yonder mountain, so that he should be able to make an attack upon the enemy from three directions at the same time.

8. He said that he was afraid that you would leave the baggage.

<sup>1</sup> faciō.

## LESSON LIX.

## PARTICIPLES.

**357.** Learn the participles of the model verbs (480-486).

*a.* Observe that there is **no present passive** or **perfect active** participle.

That is, taking the verb "to send" as an example, there are **no forms** in Latin corresponding to "**having sent**" or "**being sent.**"

*b.* What participles are used as parts of the compound tenses in the model verbs?

**358.** Participles are **declined** like **adjectives**, and, like them, **agree** with nouns or pronouns in **gender, number, and case.**

## PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

*Amāns, loving.*

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
NOM.	amāns	amāns	amantēs	amantia
GEN	amantis	amantis	amantium	amantium
DAT.	amantī	amantī	amantibus	amantibus
ACC.	amantem	amāns	amantēs, -īs	amantia
ABL.	amante, -ī	amante, -ī	amantibus	amantibus
VOC.	(amāns	amāns)	(amantēs	amantia)

The declension is similar to that of *sapiēns* (167).

**Perfect** (*amātus*) and **Future** (*amātūrus*) Participles are declined like **bonus** (474).

**359.**

## EXAMPLES.

*Ad Gallōs oppūgnantēs oppidum vēnit, He came to the Gauls (while they were) attacking a town.*

*Prīnceps captus ad Italiam mittētur, The chief, if he is*

*captured (or, when captured, literally, having been taken), will be sent to Italy.*

Prīncipem captum ad Ītaliā mīsit, *He sent the chief, when he had been captured (having been captured), to Italy.*

Gallī graviter perturbātī fortiter pūgnāvērunt, *The Gauls, (although) greatly disturbed (having been greatly disturbed), fought bravely.*

Lēgātus, perturbātus, ad suōs properāvit, *The legate, (because he was) disturbed (having been disturbed), hastened to his own men.*

Nāvem relictā cēpit, *He took the ship which had been left behind.*

Oppidum oppūgnātum est, *The town has been (or was) attacked.*

a. The **present** (active) participle represents the action as **going on** at the time denoted by the main verb.

Use of  
Participle.

b. Notice the various ways in which the **perfect** (passive) participle can be translated. It represents the action as **completed** at the time denoted by the main verb. This explains the somewhat puzzling fact illustrated by the last sentence, that **est**, when combined with the perfect participle of a regular verb to form the perfect passive tense, **seems** to change its meaning to "*was*." **Oppidum oppūgnātum est**, if translated literally, means "*The town is (in a state of) having (formerly) been attacked.*"

Does this also explain why **erat**, when found in the pluperfect passive of a regular verb, is translated "*had been*" instead of "*was*," and why **erit**, when found in the future perfect passive, is translated "*shall have been*" instead of "*shall be*"?

**360. RULE.**—With **names of towns** the place to which is expressed by the **accusative without a preposition**.

Accusative of  
Place Whither,  
Names of Towns.

**Ad urbem Rōmam vēnī**, *I came to the city Rome.*

**Rōmam vēnī**, *I came to Rome.*

**Ad Galliam vēnī**, *I came to Gaul.*

*a.* In the first sentence **ad** governs **urbem**, with which **Rōmam** is in apposition.

In the second **Rōmam** is used alone, and so is without a preposition.

*b.* Notice that the rule does not apply to the names of countries.

*c.* **Domus** (420, 472) also conforms to this rule.

### 361. CURIŌ IN ĀFRICĀ.

Caesar's operations against the Senate and Pompey before the battle of Pharsalia (245) included the sending of an army under Caius Curio to invade the Roman province of Africa, in order to conquer Varus, a general who was friendly to the Senate. Varus secured the help of king Juba, who ruled over the tribes living in the mountains south and west of the province.

### 362. I.

His temporibus Cāius Curio in Āfricam,<sup>1</sup> ā Caesare missus, ex Siciliā duās legiōnēs ex quattuor quās eī dederat Caesar et quīngentōs equitēs trāns-portāvit et ad locum Anquillāriam vēnīt. Hūius adventum Lūcius Caesar filius cum decem longīs nāvibus ad Clupeam exspectāns, timēns nāvium multitudinem ex altō ad proximum litus **fūgerat** et pedibus Hadrumentum properāverat. Id oppidum Cōnsidius Longus ūna legiōne tenēbat. Reliquae nāvēs Lūcī Caesaris, **fugientēs** ex altō, sē Hadrumentum recēpērunt. Lūcium Cae-

<sup>1</sup> See Maps IV and V for the places mentioned in 362 and 365.

sarem **fugientem** capere temptans Rūfus nāvibus duodecim quās ex Siciliā Curiō ē-dūxerat ut classem ā Vārō missam ab onerāriis nāvibus prohiberet, postquam in litore relictam ā Lūciō nāvem vidit, hanc cēpit; atque ad Curiōnem cum suā classe et nāve captā vēnit.

Curiō Rūfum Uticam cum nāvibus prae-misit; ipse exercitum ad flūmen Bagradam dūxit. Ibi Rebilum lēgātum cum legiōnibus reliquit; ipse cum equitatū properāvit ad Castra Cornēlia, quoniam is locus idōneus habēbatur. Is est mōns ad litus, et ab-est ab Uticā paulō amplius passūs mille.

**363.**

## WORD-LIST.

**fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitus, to run away, to flee.**

**364.** (Use participles wherever you can.)

## I.—THE DEATH OF DUMNORIX.

Dumnorix, fearing that Caesar was going to kill him, fled from the Roman camp with the horsemen of the Haedui. Horsemen were sent by Caesar, so that he might be captured while he was fleeing. They killed him while he was trying to defend himself, and repeating (saying often<sup>1</sup>) that he was free himself and the chief of a free state. His horsemen, terrified, came back again<sup>2</sup> to Caesar.

2. Lucius Caesar, fearing lest he should be captured by the fleet which had been sent from Italy, left his ship upon the nearest shore and came on foot to Hadrumentum. The fleet of Rufus, who was trying to capture the ships of Lucius Caesar, came to the ship which the latter had abandoned. Rufus came with the captured ship to Curio, who sent him to Utica.

<sup>1</sup> saepe.<sup>2</sup> iterum.



## LESSON LX.

## READING LESSON.

**265.** CURIŌ IN ĀFRICĀ.—II.

Ex hōc monte Curiō castra Vārī vidit. Eōdem tempore vidit multa ex omnibus partibus per viās ā populō portārī, quae bellum timentēs ex agris in urbem portābant. Ad hās viās equitātum misit, ut haec caperet, eōdemque tempore sēscentī equitēs ex oppidō peditēsque quadringentī, ā Vārō missi, ex-ivērunt. Equitēs pūgnāvērunt, neque vērō primum impetum nostrōrum sustinēre potuērunt, sed interfecti sunt circiter centum et viginti. Reliqui sē in castra ad oppidum recēpērunt.

Interim adventū longārum nāvium Curiō magistrīs onerāriarū nāvium nūntiāvit, quae ad Uticam numerō circiter ducentae stābant, “Eum hostium habēbō locō, quī nōn ad Castra Cornēlia suās nāvēs trādūxisset.” Omnēs nāvēs ex Uticā ex-ivērunt et ad Castra Cornēlia vērunt. Quā rē omnium rērum cōpiam obtinēre exercitus potuit.

Tum Curiō sē in castra ad Bagradam flūmen recēpit, postēroque diē exercitum Uticam dūxit et prope oppidum castra ponēbat. Eī castrōrum vāllum faciētī equitēs nūntiant māgna auxilia equitum peditumque ā rēge Iubā missa Uticam venīre, eōdem tempore māgna pulvis vidētur, et brevissimō tempore primum agmen est in cōspectū. Novam rem timēns Curiō equitēs prae-mittit ut ita primum impetum sustineat; ipse celeriter ab opere legiōnāriōs dūcit aciemque instruit. Equitēs proelium committunt et, quoniam nūllum timentēs principēs hostis iter faciēbant, tōta auxilia rēgis perturbāta ac perterrita fugere cōgunt, māgnumque peditum numerum interficiunt. Equitātus fugā servātur, atque sē per litus celeriter in oppidum recipit.

**366.**

The Gauls say that the plan of this messenger is a very good (one). They will make an attack upon the Romans while they are making<sup>1</sup> a march through the forest. They will first attack the auxiliary troops, whom they will easily be able to throw into confusion, so that these by their terror<sup>1</sup> may disturb the legionary troops.

2. The chiefs, sent<sup>1</sup> by king Juba, while they were marching<sup>1</sup> to Utica with many hundred horsemen and footmen, came in sight of the Romans, who were building the rampart of their camp. When attacked<sup>1</sup> by the Roman cavalry the horsemen fled along the shore to Utica.

## LESSON LXI.

**367.**

## DEPONENT VERBS.

**Deponent verbs** are **passive** in **form**, but **active** in **meaning**.

**Ūtor**, *I use* (not, I am used).

**Sequitur**, *he follows* (not, he is followed).

There are deponent verbs belonging to each of the conjugations, but the more common ones are nearly all of the third conjugation.

**368.** Their conjugation differs from that of the passive of other verbs in two ways:

1. The **future infinitive** of deponent verbs is **active in form**: **cōnātūrus esse** (not cōnātum īri).

2. Deponent verbs have the **participles** of **both voices**:

**cōnāns**, *trying*.

**cōnātūrus**, *about to try*.

**cōnātus**, *having tried*.

**cōnandus**, (gerundive).

a. Does 357, a, apply to deponent verbs?

<sup>1</sup> Use a participle.

## THE ABLATIVE WITH SOME DEPONENTS.

**369.** There are **five** deponent verbs which, with their compounds, take **no** direct object in the **accusative case**. They **govern** the **ablative case** instead; thus,

*Ūteris meō gladiō, You are using my sword.*

*Quis labōre nōn fruitur? Who does not enjoy labor?*

**370. RULE.**--*Ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor,* and their compounds, govern the **ablative**.

**371.**

1. *Ut facile eō cōnsiliō ūtātur,* impedimenta in locō idōneō relinquit.

2. *Facile est tōtius Galliae imperiō potiri.*

3. *Ēius cōnsiliō ūsī, proficīscī* temptāvērunt.

4. *Tuō gladiō in impetū ūsus est.*

5. *Gladiis legiōnārii nōn ūtentur,* nē obsidēs vulnerentur.

6. *Quis bonā fortūnā nōn fruitur?*

7. *In Ītaliā celeriter profectus est.*

8. *Militem praedā frūi dicit.*

9. *Militēs, urbe potiti, etiam mulierēs et liberōs interfēcērunt.*

10. *Impedimentis hostium potiti sumus, quoniam impetum nōn sus-tinēre* potuērunt.

11. *Laetissimi erant militēs, quoniam urbe cum omni praedā potiti erant.*

12. *Bellō defessus, in Italiā cum unā cohorte proficīscī* contendit.

13. *Caesar proficīscēbātur* ut agmen hostis ā monte prohibērētur.

14. *Ūtī* equitatū temptābat, sed labōre equi defessi erant.

15. *Quī erant* hostium longius *profectī,* hōs levis armātūrae interfēcērunt.

16. *Tandem cōnātus est* Caesar opera per-ficere, ut impetum *sus-tinēret.*

17. *Suō quisque cōnsiliō ūtēbātur.*

18. Galba nūntium pauca locūtum loqui plūra prohibuit.

19. Eā quae secūta est hieme Usipetēs Germānī magnā cum multitudīne hominum flūmen Rhēnum trāns-ivērunt, quoniam ā Suēbīs complūrēs annōs premēbantur.

20. Eōdem diē ex urbe **proficīscitur** māgnisque itineribus in Senonēs per-venit.

**372.**

## WORD-LIST.

**ūtor ūtī, ūsus sum,** (deponent) *to use.*

**proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum,** (deponent) *to set out, to go.*

**sus-tineō, sustinēre, sustinuī, sustentum,** *to hold out against, sustain.*

**373.**

1. It was told to the lieutenant, as he was setting out with three cohorts, that the Gauls would assault him suddenly among the hills. Fearing that foot-soldiers would not be able to hold out against their attack, he gave horses to the soldiers of the cohorts, using the horses of the auxiliary troops.

2. Harassed during seven years by their enemies; they at length gained possession of a few ships, in order to come to their friends. But when their enemies learned that they were trying to make use of the ships which they had secured, they made an attack by night and captured them.

## LESSON LXII.

## THE DATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVES.

**374. Sibi nocent,** *They are injuring themselves.*

**Mihi persuāsit ut eī crēderem,** *He persuaded me to believe him.*

**375. RULE.**—Most verbs meaning to **favor, please, believe, trust, help,** and their **opposites;** also, to **persuade, command, obey, serve, resist,** and the like, are followed by the **dative.**

a. These verbs are **intransitive** (that is, admit only of an indirect object. Cp. 23). English transitive verbs (admitting a direct object) are often used to translate them.

b. Note that **cēdō** (*depart*), **cōnfidō** (*trust in*), **cōnsulō** (*consult for*), **crēdō**, **cupiō** (*long for*), **ignōscō** (*overlook*), **imperō**, **noceō**, **persuādeō**, **placeō** (*be pleasing*), **resistō** (*withstand*), and **studeō** (*be eager for*) are **intransitive**.

These verbs occur frequently in the writings of Caesar and Cicero.

### 376.

1. Nōbīs **persuādet** ut amīcōrum bonis ūtāmur.
2. Et sibi et cīvitātī nocēbit, si ab urbe proficiscētur.
3. Tē cum studiō sequēmur.
4. Istī nūntiō crēdere nōn possum.
5. Tibi ut veniās **persuādēbimus**, ut montēs videās.
6. Cīvitātī **persuāsit** ut ā terrā sua Caesarem omnibus cum cōpiīs prohibērent. Hōc facilius eis **persuāsit**, quoniam novīs rēbus studērent (375, b).
7. In eō itinere **persuādet** Casticō ut imperium in cīvitāte suā occupet, quod pater ante habuit, Dumnorīgīque Haeduō, fratrī Divitiāci, quī hōc tempore imperium in cīvitāte obtinuit, ut idem temptet **persuādet**.
8. **Persuādent** his cīvitātibus ut, eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, cum iis proficiscantur.

### 377.

#### WORD-LIST.

**persuādeō**, **persuādēre**, **persuāsī**, **persuāsus**, *to persuade*.  
Followed by the subjunctive with **ut** or **nē** (279).  
**cīvitās**, **cīvitātis**, f., *a state or nation*.

### 378.

1. Because the land of the Helvetians is hemmed in on all sides by very high mountains, Orgetorix easily persuaded the chiefs of this state to believe<sup>1</sup> that their land was too small, and that they, making use of their numerous soldiery, would be able to seize quickly the finest fields of Gaul.

<sup>1</sup> **crēdere**. Not infinitive.

2. The legate sent two men to the chief, who told him, "The Romans ask<sup>1</sup> you to come<sup>2</sup> to them in order that they may make use of your skill in war." He believed them, so that they were easily able to persuade him to set out,<sup>2</sup> having only<sup>3</sup> three hundred of his own men with him. The Romans attacked him in a suitable place, as he was making the journey, and killed him.

## LESSON LXIII.

THE IRREGULAR VERBS VOLO, NŪLO, MĀLO.

Principal Parts: { **volō, velle, voluī.**  
                           { **nōlō, nōlle, nōluī** [nē-volō].  
                           { **mālō, mälle, māluī** [magis-volō].

**379.** Learn the conjugation of **volō**, **nōlō** and **mālō** (487).

**380.**

1. **Vult** venire. Dixit sē **velle** venire.
2. **Nōluit sequī.** Dicunt sē **nōlle sequī.**
3. **Vīs** proficisci. Cōgnōscimus tē **velle sequī.**
4. Aliōrum bonis fruī **mālumus** quam nostris ūti.
5. **Nōluistī** audire.
6. Accidit ut ad illam civitātem venire **vellet.**
7. Dicitur eum hōc dōnum illō **māluisse.**
8. **Volentēs** aut **nōlentēs** impetum facient.
9. Dicunt sē **voluisse** Caesarem **sequī.**
10. **Māvult** re-dūci.
11. Nōn **vultis** aciem instrui.
12. **Nōlī** perterrēri.
13. Agmen exercitūs **sequēminī.**
14. **Nōlīte** persuādēri.
15. Agmen Gallōrum cum equitātū **sequēbātur.**
16. **Vultis**ne mē eōdem tempore venire?
17. **Mālumus** tē ā-futūram esse.

<sup>1</sup> **petere.**<sup>2</sup> Not infinitive (279).<sup>3</sup> **tantum.**

18. **Volam** ad-esse, sed ille superiōre tempore **nōluit** quemquam praeter vōs vestrumque patrem ad-esse. Timeō nē mē venīre **nōlit**.

**Nolumus** illum vidēre nisi tē ad-esse **voluerit**.

## 381.

## WORD LIST.

**volō, velle, voluī**, *to be willing, to wish.*

**nōlō, nōlle, nōluī**, *to be unwilling.*

**sequor, sequī, secūtus sum** (deponent), *to follow.*

## 382.

1. He was informed that this lieutenant would follow another, but was unwilling to lead the line of march himself (341, 346).

2. He wished to set out for Italy, but could not (do so).

3. He prefers to attack the winter camp by night, but his soldiers have said that they are unwilling to follow him (341, 346).

4. We were unwilling to follow you, for you did not give us the grain in the fields.

5. Do you not wish us to use (370) the things which you gave us?

6. I can use two swords at the same time, but he is unable to use even<sup>1</sup> one (370).

## LESSON LXIV.

## 383.

## EXAMPLES.

**Cum militēs in castra vērunt, lēgātus eōs hortātus est**, *When the soldiers came into camp, the legate encouraged them.*

**Cum bellum perfectum erit, Rōmam veniam**, *When the war is (shall have been) finished, I will go to Rome.*

<sup>1</sup> **etiam**.

**Cum militēs in castra venīrent, Gallī eōs oppūgnāvērunt,**  
*While the soldiers were coming into the camp the Gauls attacked them.*

**Cum oppidum captum esset, Massiliam**  
**contendit,** *When the town had been captured he* **Cum, when**  
*hastened to Massilia.* (or Temporal).

a. Notice the moods and tenses of the verbs in the **cum** clauses.

**384. RULE.**—**Cum**, meaning *when*, is followed by the **subjunctive**, if the tense is the **imperfect** or **pluperfect**; **otherwise**, by the **indicative**.

**385.**

1. Cum barbarī proelium committere peterent, princeps unum ex hostibus telō vulnerāvit.

2. Militēs cum oppidum cēpērunt, omnēs hominēs interfēcērunt.

3. Militēs cum oppidum cēpissent, omnēs hominēs interfēcērunt.

4. Cum ad eum centuriōnem dūcerem, multa dixit.

5. Lēgātus nūntiō duce ūsus exercitum per silvās dūxit.

6. Equitēs, cum lēgātus aciem instrueret, eī hostem prope esse nūntiāvērunt.

7. Lēgātō instruentī aciem equitēs id nūntiāvērunt.

8. Lēgātus, cum aciem instrūxisset, complūrēs equitēs prae-misit.

9. Cum Caesar per extrēmōs Lingonum finēs iter faceret, circiter mīlia passuum decem ā Rōmānis tribus in castris Vercingetorix suās cōpiās constituit, et equitum ducibus nūntiat vēnisse tempus victōriæ.

10. Signum dat et ā dextrā parte aliō ascēnsū cōdem tempore Aeduōs mittit.

11. Cum in Ītaliā proficiscerētur Caesar, Galbam cum legiōne duodecimā et parte equitātūs in Nantuātēs aliāsque civitātēs misit, quæ ā finibus Allobrogum ad summās Alpēs pertinent.



12. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum milibus duodecim ab-esset, ad eum lēgātī vērērunt.

13. Cum celeriter nostrī arma cēpissent atque ūnā ex parte castrōrum equitēs ē-missī hostibus superiōrēs fuissent, hī suōs redūxērunt.

**386.**

1. He gave me this gift when he set out from Rome.

2. When the twelfth legion shall have seized the hill, he will make the attack with the greatest eagerness.

3. When he saw that he would not be able to take the town, he placed a camp in a suitable position.

4. When he came to see me he gave me this sword.

5. When he came to me he persuaded me to give (378, N. 1) him a greater (228) number of troops than you had yourself (222).

6. They all set out when there was much grain in the fields.

7. When they had collected a large number of men they hastened to Aduatuca.

8. When he saw you he said that it was you who had tried<sup>1</sup> to wound his foot with your javelin in the battle (341, 346).

## LESSON LXV.

**387.**

## REVIEW SENTENCES.

1. Dicit sēsē ad eum venīre nōluisse.

2. Militēs equitēsque dūxit ut eōs qui fūgerant per-seque-rētur.

3. Aristium, tribūnum militum, iter ad legiōnem faci-entem ex oppidō Gallī ē-dūcunt.

4. Libō, profectus ab Oricō cum classe longārum nāvium quīnquāgintā, Brundisium vēnit.

5. Petit ut ipse cum Pompēiō conloquātur.

<sup>1</sup> Pluperfect subjunctive.

6. Libō ad Pompēium proficiscitur.
7. Saepius fortunam temptāre Galba nōlēbat.
8. Hīs dē rēbus Caesar certior factus, ipse cum primum per anni tempus potuit ad exercitum contendit.
9. Dixit Rōmānōs nūllam facultātem habēre nāvium.
10. Hostēs proeliō superātī cum sē ex fugā recēpērunt ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce misērunt. Cum hīs lēgātis Com-mius vēnit, quem dixeram ā Caesare in Britanniam prae-missum esse.
11. Equitēs nostrī cum hostium equitatū proelium com-misērunt. Cum sē illi in silvam ad suōs reciperent ac rūsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent, neque nostrī longius sequī audērent, interim legiōnēs sex ad collem vēnērunt ubi castra ponere Caesar constituerat. Cum prima impedimēta nostrī exercitūs ab iīs, qui in silvā erant, vīsa sunt, subitō omnibus cōpiīs ad nostra castra in eōs qui in opere occupātī sunt contendērunt.

### 388.

The Gauls captured the tribune while he, having set out with the two cohorts which he was leading, was marching to attack (378, N. 1) three hundred of the enemy who had fled into the forests. They led him and his soldiers, after he had been captured, to the gate<sup>1</sup> of the camp from which he had set out, and there killed them, in order that the Romans who had been left in the camp might be terrified.

The Romans who were in the camp, when they saw that the Gauls had killed the tribune and all of the soldiers whom they had captured, fearing lest they themselves would be overcome, on the following night hastened through (166, N. 2) the forest to the winter camp of the legate. The Gauls upon the next day carried all that the soldiers had left in the camp (away) from it to their own homes (420, 472).

that

<sup>1</sup> porta.

## LESSON LXVI.

## GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

389.

EXAMPLES.

Suī dēfendendī causā id fēcit, *He did this for the sake of defending himself.*

Operam dat oppidīs expūgnandīs, *He* Gerundive.  
*devotes himself to taking towns by storm (to towns to be taken by storm).*

Vēnit ad bellum gerendum, *He came to wage war (for war to be waged).*

Multa dē mūniendīs castrīs dīxit, *He said many things about fortifying camps (about camps to be fortified).*

a. The **Gerundive** is a **verbal adjective**. It is called an **adjective** because it **agrees** with its noun in **gender, number** and **case**, as in the sentences above. It is a **verbal adjective** because it expresses **action**.

390. Causā urbem videndī venient, *They will come for the sake of seeing the city.*

Mulī ūtilēs sunt impedīmenta portandō, Gerund.  
*Mules are useful for carrying baggage.*

Victōria oppidum expūgnandō eī erat, *Victory was his by storming the town.*

a. The **Gerund** is a **verbal noun**, of the **neuter** gender, and used only in the **singular**. It takes a direct object. It is the same in meaning as the gerundive.

b. The Nominative case is wanting in the gerund. The **infinitive** is used instead, thus :  
Cēdere est turpe, *To yield is disgraceful.*

## 391.

## EXAMPLES.

Facultātēs habent { oppidī capiendī,  
oppidum capiendī, } *They have re-  
sources for (of) taking the town.*

a. In the two ways of expressing this sentence, which uses the gerundive?

392. Dicit omnēs Galliae cōpiās ad sē oppūgnandum vēnisse, *He says that all the troops of Gaul came to attack him (to him [a man who was] to be attacked).* Purpose Clauses.

See also 389, third sentence.

a. Notice that **ad** with the **gerundive** or **gerund** is used to express **purpose**. In what other ways may purpose be expressed?

## 393.

1. Cōnsilium urbem capiendī nūntiāvit.
2. Cōnsilium urbis capiendae nūntiāvit.
3. Veniunt ad urbem videndam.
4. Neque cōnsili habendī neque arma capiendī facultās datur.
5. Complūra dicendō eis persuādet.
6. Ad urbem capiendam labōrem dat.
7. Labōrandī causā ad vallum properāvit.
8. Caesar ab urbe proficiscitur atque in ulteriōrem Galliam pervenit, ubi cōgnōscit missum esse in Hispāniam ā Pompēiō Rūfum, quem paucis ante diēbus captum ipse dimiserat.
9. Dixit profectum esse Domitium ad occupandam Massiliam nāvibus septem.
10. In praedā capiendā hostibus nocet.
11. Dicit Carnūtēs interficiendī eōrum prīncipis cōnsilium captūrōs esse.
12. Studiō eōrum futūram esse aliquam pūgnandī facultātem existimāvit.

13. Aliquem prīncipum quōs sēcum ad cōnsilium capiendum habēbat mīsit.

14. Galli ad nōs interficiendōs contendunt.

15. Tribūnus suis rem dē mittendis lēgātis nūntiat.

16. Primō militēs videndī causā laeti ex castris ex-ivērunt.

17. Ipsī per-ficiendī operis causā longius proficiscuntur.

18. Lēgātōs monet ut contineant militēs nē studiō pūgnandi aut spē praedae longius proficiscantur.

19. Signum recipiendī dedit.

20. Ad salutem obtinendam pūgnābunt.

394. (Translate where possible in two ways.)

1. He has very great resources (396) for waging war.

2. He wishes you to give him the opportunity to see (of seeing) the city.

3. He announces a plan for capturing the baggage.

4. He was kept from making an attack upon the wall by lack of javelins.

5. She takes (uses) too much time in preparing food.<sup>1</sup>

## LESSON LXVII.

### READING LESSONS.

395.

CURIŌ IN ĀFRICĀ.—III.

Proximā nocte centuriōnēs duo ex castris Curiōnis cum legiōnāriis duo et viginti ad Vārum fugiunt. Hī ei nūntiant quam forsitan habuērunt opiniōnem; dicunt tōtum exercitum Curiōnis nūllum pūgnandi studium habēre, māximumque opus esse in cōspēctum exercitūs eius venīre et dicendī militibus **facultātem** dare.

Erat in exercitū Vārī Quīntilius, qui in Ītaliā sē suāsque cōpiās Caesari in dēditiōnem dederat. Hic di-missus ā Caesare in Āfricam vēnerat, **quod** bellum gerendī **facultātem** petēbat, legiōnēsque eās tradūxerat Curiō quās superiōribus tempori-

<sup>1</sup> cibus, -i.

bus ex eō recēperat Caesar. Hōc virō ad rem gerendam Vārus ūtitur.

Centuriōnum opiniōne ad-ductus Vārus posterō diē legiōnēs ex castris ē-dūcit, **quod** Quintiliō **facultātem** dicendī dare vult. Facit idem Curiō, **quod** Vārus proelium committendī **facultātem** dare vidētur, atque suās uterque cōpiās instruit. Hāc **facultāte** dicendī ūsus, Quintilius aciem Curiōnis circum-ivit atque legiōnāriīs dixit, “ Prīmam sacrāmēntī, quod apud mē dixistis, memoriā dē-ponere atque bellum gerere nōlite contrā eōs quī eādē fortūnā ūsi sumus. Si mē atque Vārum sequēmini complūra dōna vōbīs dabimus.”

Sed nūllam in partem ab exercitū Curiōnis haec eō tempore grāta vidēbantur, atque ita suās uterque cōpiās re-dūxit.

Curiō dixit, “ Cum primum pūgnandī **facultās** erit data, proeliō rem committam.” Posterō diē cōpiās productās eōdem locō quō superiōribus diēbus instrūxerat, in aciē conlocāvit. Vārus quoque cum pūgnandī studiō suās cōpiās prō-dūxit. Erat vallis inter duās aciēs, nōn ita māgna, sed difficilī ascēnsū. Subitō ā sinistrō cornū Vārī equitātus omnis atque multae levis armātūrae cum sē in vallem dē-mitterent vidēbantur. Ad hōs Curiō equitātum et duās cohortēs misit, quōrum primum impetum equitēs Vārī nōn sustinuērunt, sed celeriter ad suōs fūgērunt. Levis armātūrae, relictāe, circum-ventae sunt ā nostris atque interfectae sunt.

Ita omnēs quī erant tōtā in aciē Vārī suōs perterritōs fugere vidēbant. Tum Rebilus, lēgātus Caesaris quem Curiō sēcum ex Sicilia dūxerat **quod** eum māgnū cōnsiliū in bellum gerendō habere **exīstimābat**, “ Perterritum,” dixit, “ hostem vidēs, Curiō! Cūr ita secundō tempore ūtī nōn vis?” Curiō signum dedit, et in vallem aciem dūxit. Difficilis militibus ascēnsus vallis erat, sed Vārī militēs, fugā suōrum perterriti, nihil dē sēsē dēfendendō **exīstimābant**. **Quod** omnes militēs Vārī sē ab equitātū circum-veniri **exīstimāvērunt** fugā sē in castra recipere contendunt.

Quā in fugā Fabius, quīdam miles ex exercitū Curiōnis primum agmen fugientium secūsus “ Vāre! Vāre!” appellābat,

ut à Vârô ūnus esse ex ěius militibus et monĕre aliquid velle **exĭstimārĕtur**. Cum ille saepius appellātus stetit ut eĭ dĭceret, umerum gladiō vulnerāre Fabius temptāvit, quod perĭculum ille scūtō vix vitāvit. Fabius ā proximĭs militibus circum-ventus interfectus est.

Hāc fugientium multĭtūdine portae castrōrum occupantur atque iter impeditur, plūrēsque in eō locō sine vulnere quam in proeliō aut fugā interfecti sunt. Tamen Curiō castra nōn oppugnāre temptāvit, **quod** sē natūrā loci prohibĕri **exĭstimāvit**. Exercitum in sua castra redūxit.

Nostrōrum nāllus mĭles praeter Fabium interfectus est : ex numerō hostium sexcenti interfecti atque mille vulnerāti sunt.

## 396.

## WORD-LIST.

**facultās, facultātis**, f., *ability, opportunity*. Plural also, *resources*.

**exĭstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, *to suppose, think*.

**quod**, *because*.

## 397.

1. By chance three hostages were wounded by the frightened (359) horsemen.

2. He is afraid that the footman has wounded your foot with his sword (353).

3. The soldiers, tired out by the long march, were unable to defend themselves, and were killed while trying to retreat (359).

4. He is unwilling that you should give help to his son.

5. Bibulus stationed the ships of the fleet along<sup>1</sup> the whole<sup>2</sup> shore, so that Caesar was unable for a long time to obtain more troops.

6. He refused to flee, saying that it was better to be killed (341, 346).

<sup>1</sup> per.

<sup>2</sup> tōtus, -a, -um.

7. This is a good plan for carrying on the war, but that is a better (one).

8. He wishes her to follow him to Rome, but she is unwilling to leave her son.

9. The messenger said that the cohorts had occupied the top of the mountain for two days (341, 346).

10. The people went<sup>1</sup> to see the army as it was setting out (279, 359).

11. They will not have time to lead (of leading) the cohorts to the hill.

12. This is a very suitable spot<sup>2</sup> for placing a camp.

13. It was reported to Caesar that this chief had persuaded many of the Gauls to make war (378, N. 1).

14. Is the soldier able to use this javelin?

15. When fifty-five had been killed, the rest gave their chief as a hostage.

## LESSON LXVIII.

### 398. THE DATIVE OF END OR SERVICE.

**Legiōnem tibi praesidiō dat,** *He gives the legion to you as a guard (for a defence).*

**Peditēs auxiliō mittit,** *He sends foot-soldiers as a reinforcement.*

Notice that **praesidiō** and **auxiliō** denote the end or purpose which **legiōnem** and **peditēs** serve.

Notice in the first sentence that the same sentence may contain a dative of service and an indirect object.

**Dative of End or Service.**

**399. RULE.**—The **end** or **purpose** which an object serves may be denoted by the **dative**.

a. Often a second dative is used, to denote the person or thing affected, as **castris** in the following sentence:

**Cōpiās praesidiō castris relinquet,** *He will leave troops as a guard for the camp.* (Cp. 20, c.)

<sup>1</sup> ivit.

<sup>2</sup> 230.



**400. RULE.**—Many verbs compounded with **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō,** Dative with Com-  
pounds. **sub,** and **super** are followed by the **dative**.

*a.* These verbs are **intransitive**, that is, they do not take a direct object. The **dative** which follows them is an **indirect object** (23).

*b.* All of the compounds of **sum** govern the **dative**, excepting **possum** (486) and **ab-sum**.

*c.* **Prae-ficiō** takes both a **dative** and an **accusative** (cp. e.g. 401, 11, 17).

*d.* **Prae-mittō** does not come under this rule.

#### 401.

1. Māgnās cōpiās praesidiō nāvibus reliquit.

2. Brittani perturbāti hunc tōti bellō prae-fēcerant.

3. Caesar eōs praesidiō utrisque castris reliquit.

4. Id si faciēnt māgnō cum periculō nostris erit.

5. Ūna rēs erat māgnō ūsui nostris.

6. His prae-erat Viridovix.

7. Cum nox oppugnandi finem fēcisset, Rēmus, qui oppidō prae-fuerat, nūntium ad Caesarem misit, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse. Nocte Caesar, iisdem ducibus ūsus, qui nūntii ā Rēmō vēnerant, sagittāriōs auxiliō misit.

8. Ad flūmen partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnāti sunt, eō cōnsiliō,<sup>1</sup> ut aut castellum, cui prae-erat Titurius, expugnārent<sup>2</sup> aut agrōs Rēmōrum occupārent, qui māgnō ūsui nōbis ad bellum gerendum erant.

9. Māgnō ūsui eī erit si loca, flūmina, silvās cōgnōscet.

10. Hōc periculō duci Caesar equitātum auxiliō dedit.

11. Omnem equitātum prae-misit. His Cottam lēgātum prae-fēcit.

12. Brūtus classī prae-erat.

13. Illi, cum iis cohortibus quae, praesidiō castris relictæ, nōn dēfessae labōre erant, celeriter ad eum locum pervēnerunt.

14. Ut nāves longae parvum spatium ab onerāniis nāvibus conlocārentur imperāvīt, quae rēs māgnō ūsui nostris fuit.

15. Id cum cōgnitum est, Crassus, qui equitātūi prae-erat, tertiam aciem auxiliō nostris labōrantibus mīsit.

16. Omnia dē erant quae ad impetum faciendum erant ūsui.

17. Caesar in hiberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dūxit : hibernis Labiēnum prae-fēcit.

#### 402.

1. Caesar placed other legates over the fifth legion.
2. The cohort was (for) a protection to the baggage.
3. They sent the footmen as an aid to the cohorts.
4. The weapons were of great use to me (401, 5).
5. The legate who commands these legions has persuaded Caesar to place<sup>1</sup> you over the cavalry.

6. Of what use are these hostages ?

7. The Germans (401, 10) were a great help to Caesar.

8. He sent forward the cavalry, but hastened himself to the nearest hill to defend<sup>1</sup> the baggage there.

9. These javelins will be (for) a great help to us in attacking the town.

10. He is unable to persuade me to hurry<sup>1</sup> to the city.

### LESSON LXIX.

#### 403.

Hoste oppūgnante, fūgērunt,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{The enemy attacking,} \\ \textit{When the enemy attacked,} \\ \textit{Because the enemy at-} \\ \textit{tacked,} \end{array} \right\} \textit{they fled.}$

Datō sīgnō, proelium commīsit,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{The signal having been} \\ \textit{given,} \\ \textit{When the signal had been} \\ \textit{given,} \\ \textit{Because the signal had} \\ \textit{been given,} \\ \textit{(Having given the signal),} \end{array} \right\} \textit{he began} \\ \textit{the battle.}$

<sup>1</sup> Not infinitive.

**Multis obsidibus ad Caesarem a Gallis missis, pacem fecit,** *When many hostages had been sent (many hostages having been sent) by the Gauls to Caesar, he made peace.*

<b>Antoniō lēgātō, vincēmus,</b>	}	<i>Antony being legate, If Antony be legate, Since Antony will be legate,</i>	} <i>we will conquer.</i>
--------------------------------------	---	---	-------------------------------

a. In these sentences notice that **oppugnante, datō** and **missis** are participles in the ablative case, agreeing with the nouns **hoste, signō** and **obsidibus** respectively.

b. Notice that this union of **noun** and **participle** in the **ablative** makes a **complete clause**, which can be translated in various ways in English.

c. Notice that either noun or participle may have **modifying words** dependent upon them, as **multis, ad Caesarem** and **a Gallis** in the third sentence. Ablative Absolute.

d. There is no participle in the last sentence. This is because the verb **sum** has no present participle.

e. This construction of the participle with a noun is grammatically **independent** of the rest of the sentence, like a parenthesis in English. Hence it is called the **Ablative Absolute**.

f. The noun or pronoun in the ablative in this construction cannot refer to the subject or object of the main verb of the sentence.

g. The ablative absolute is a common construction with the perfect passive participle. Can you see any reason why? (Cp. 357, a.)

#### 404.

1. Nāvibus complūribus factis, classem sequi cōnātī sunt.
2. Ibi Ceutronēs, locis superiōribus occupātis, ex itinere exercitum prohibere cōnantur.
3. Complūribus proeliis gestis in finēs Vocontiōrum pervēnit.
4. Hōc proeliō factō trāns flūmen exercitum trādūcit.

5. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis per **finēs** Sēquanōrum equitātum trādūcere **cōnātus est**, obsidēsque eis dedit.

6. Eā rē permissā ex **finibus** suis in silvās fugere **cōnābantur**.

7. Eō conciliō dī-missō principēs cum Caesare **loquī** voluerunt.

8. Obsidibus datis in eōrum **finēs** tamen equitātum dūcere **cōnābantur**.

9. Rē frūmentāriā parātā māgnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

10. Occupātō oppidō ibi legiōnāriōs conlocat.

11. Caesar **loquendī finem** facit sēque ad suōs recipit.

12. Proelium nōn committēbat, nē superātis hostibus dici posset eōs ab sē in conloquiō circum-ventōs esse.

## 405.

## WORD-LIST.

**finis, finis**, m., *limit, end.* Plural, *borders*, hence, *country, land.*

**cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus** (deponent), *to attempt, try.*

**loquor, loquī, locūtus** (deponent), *to speak, say.*

406. (Where possible use the Ablative Absolute in these sentences.)

1. When the line had been drawn up, he began the battle.

2. When this hill had been seized, he tried to capture the next.

3. After the camp had been placed, he sent his cavalry to the fields.

4. When this thing had been done, he prepared to make an attack.

5. Since four messengers had been sent, he did not send more.

6. He attacked the enemy while they were preparing to flee (359).

7. When hostages had been given he set out for Italy.

8. Having learned this, he hastened to Rome.

9. When we have waged this war all Gaul will have been overcome.

10. With Caesar as leader what can we fear ?

11. The hostages who have been given by the Gauls are the children of chiefs.

12. Having followed the enemy, he began battle.

## LESSON LXX.

407. Review carefully 274-277.

408. The tenses of the **Indicative** which denote **present** or **future** time (the **Present**, **Future**, and **Future Perfect**) are called **primary tenses**.

The tenses of the **Indicative** which denote **past** time (the **Imperfect**, **Perfect** and **Pluperfect**) are called **secondary tenses**.

**Primary and Secondary Tenses.**

409. The rule given in 277 can be restated thus :

A **primary tense** in the main clause is followed by the **present subjunctive**.

A **secondary tense** in the main clause is followed by the **imperfect subjunctive**.

**Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.**

410. EXAMPLES.

**Timeō** ut nūntium mīserit, *I am afraid that he did not send the messenger.*

**Timēbam** ut nūntium mīsisset, *I was afraid that he had not sent the messenger.*

a. Notice that the subjunctives in these sentences represent their action as completed at the time denoted by the main verbs.

b. Notice that the primary tense **timeō** is followed by the Perfect Subjunctive, and the secondary tense **timēbam** by the pluperfect subjunctive.

c. The **perfect** and **pluperfect** tenses of the **subjunctive** have the **same meaning**. They denote **completed action**.

**Full Rule for Sequence of Tenses.**  
See 411.

**411. RULE.**—A **primary** tense in the main clause is followed by the **present** or **perfect subjunctive**.

A **secondary** tense in the main clause is followed by the **imperfect** or **pluperfect subjunctive**.

**412.**

## EXAMPLES.

**Dicit cum vēnerit tē ēdere,** *He says that you were eating when he came.*

**Dixit cum vēnisset tē ēdere,** *He said that you were eating when he came.*

**Dicit cum veniat tē laetum futūrum esse,** *He says that you will be glad when he comes.*

**Dixit cum veniret tē laetum futūrum esse,** *He said that you would be glad when he came.*

a. The **cum** clauses in these sentences are in the indirect statement, since they are a part of what is quoted, but are in subordinate clauses, since they are introduced by the subordinate particle **cum**, and hence their verbs cannot be put in the infinitive (341).

b. Notice that their verbs (**vēnerit**, **vēnisset**, **veniat**, **veniret**) are in the **subjunctive**, and follow the rule for sequence of tenses (411).

**413. RULE.**—The **main verb** of an **indirect statement** is put in the **infinitive**, with subject **accusative**, and depends upon the verb or expression of **saying, thinking** or **perceiving**. Full Rule for Indirect Statements.

The **Subordinate clauses** of an indirect statement have their verbs in the **subjunctive**, and conform to the rule for the sequence of tenses.

**414.**

## THE APPEAL OF DIVITIACUS.

Divitiacus Haeduus Caesari ita locutus est; Civitatem Haeduorum armis contendisse cum Germanis quos civitas Sēquanorum auxiliō trāns Rhēnum flūmen trādūxisset. Supērātōs, qui suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī amicitia plūrimum

ante in Galliâ potuissent, coactôs esse Sêquanis obsidês dare, ut suâ civitâs â populô Rômânô auxilium nôn peteret. Ūnum sê esse ex omnî civitâte Haeduôrum quî addūcî nôn potuisset, ut liberôs suôs obsidês daret. Ob eam rem sê ex civitâte fūgisse et Rômam vênisse ut auxilium peteret, quod sôlus nôn obsidibus tenêrêtur.

Sed pēius victōribus Sêquanis quam Haeduis accidisse, quod Ariovistus, rēx Germânōrum, tertiam partem agrî eōrum, quî esset optimus tōtius Galliae, occupāvisset et nunc alteram partem tertiam occupāre vellet, quod Germânōrum mīlia hominum quattuor et vīgintî ad eum vênissent, quibus locum parâret. Futūrum esse paucis annis ut omnês ex Galliae finibus pellerentur atque omnês Germānî Rhēnum trāns-îrent.<sup>1</sup> Caesarem solum Galliam omnem ab Ariovistô posse dēfendere.

## 415.

1. Caesar said that he gave the opportunity of beginning battle to Ariovistus when the line of battle had been drawn up, but that the latter restrained his men from battle, because he did not think the time a suitable one.

2. He learned that the council of the Gauls had been held<sup>2</sup> for many years at this place.

3. When his soldiers were pressed for want of water, he persuaded them to send him<sup>3</sup> as an envoy to Caesar.

4. They defended this region with the greatest courage, so that the enemy were not able even<sup>4</sup> to seize the grain in the fields (309).

5. Turn 414 from **Sed pēius** to the end into a direct statement.

<sup>1</sup> Imperfect subjunctive. Cp. 488. <sup>2</sup> **habeō**. <sup>3</sup> Not infinitive. <sup>4</sup> **etiam**.

## LESSON LXXI.

THE IRREGULAR VERB EŌ, GO.Principal Parts, **eō**, **īre**, **īvī** (**īī**), (**itūrus**).**416.** Learn the conjugation of **eō** (488).**417.** EXAMPLES.**Ex castrīs profectus est**, *He set out from the camp.***Populus frūmentō caruit**, *The people were in want of grain.***Equī aquā prīvātī sunt ut militēs biberent**, *The horses were deprived of water in order that the soldiers might drink.*

Notice that in the last two sentences the idea of separation or privation (expressed in the first by **ex**) is expressed by the ablatives **frūmentō** and **aquā** without a preposition.

**418. RULE.**—**Separation** is expressed by the **ablative**, often without a preposition.

•  
Ablative  
of Separation.

**419.**

1. Frūmentum ut quisque **domō** ex-portāret imperāvērunt.
2. Dixit Haeduis sē redditūrum obsidēs nōn esse.
3. Erant itinera duo, quibus itineribus **domō** ex-ire possent.
4. Octāvius, cum iīs quās habēbat nāvibus, Salonās pervēnit. Civēs cum nōn perterrere posset, oppidum oppugnāre cōnātus est. Complūribus interfectis Octāvius Dyrrhachium sēsē ad Pompēium recēpit.
5. Multōs dies terrā prohibitus, tandem cum classe ex-iiit.
6. Tigurinī, cum **domō** ex-issent, patrum nostrōrum memoriā Pisōnem lēgātum interfecerant.
7. Ille Oricum proficiscitur. Tum subitō Apollōniam it. Stabērius Apollōniā, quī huic oppidō prae-erat, fūgit.
8. Equitibus per litus conlocātis, Antōnius aquā classem prohibēbat.



9. Duae fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs, ūna quam **domō** sēcum dūxerat, altera quae Suēba natiōne erat.

10. Proeliō abs-tinēbat.

11. Ariovistus milibus passuum duōbus ultrā Caesarem castra fēcit, eō cōsiliō, ut frūmentō eum prohibēret. Caesar, nē diūtius frūmentō prohibērētur, ultrā illum alia castra posuit.

12. Quod, omne frūmentō ā-missō, in suā terrā nihil est, Allobrogibus imperat ut iis frūmenti cōpiam faciant.

13. Calēnus, legiōnibus in nāvēs im-positis, nāvēs solvit.

14. Hī cum essent ex terrā Ēpīri vīsī, Copōnius, quī classī prae-erat, nāvēs suās Dyrrhachiō ē-dūxit.

## 420.

## WORD-LIST.

**domus, domūs, (domī), f., house, home (472).**

## 421.

1. He told me that he was going home<sup>1</sup> (413).

2. He wished you to go with us.

3. When he left home he first went to see you (384).

4. We are going to the river to bring (279) water (back) home.<sup>1</sup>

5. He will attempt to keep the Romans out of his country.

6. He said that he would not begin battle, since the army of the other legate had retreated (413).

7. They said that they were unable to persuade the Allobroges to keep<sup>2</sup> their men from battle.

8. Marcus says that he surpasses all other men in bravery (194).

9. Kept<sup>2</sup> from (securing) grain for a long time, he at length went away.

10. He is collecting many things suitable for waging war (20, c, 389-392).

<sup>1</sup> 360, c.

<sup>2</sup> 419, 5.

## LESSON LXXII.

**422.** Read again 278, 279, 308, 309.

When the **subject** of a verb in a subordinate clause denoting **purpose** (or **result**) is **different** from the **subject** of the **main verb** of the sentence, **quī** (and not **ut**) introduces the subordinate clause.

**Lēgātus Galbam mittit, quī locī nātūram cōgnōscat,**  
*The legate sends Galba, who is to find out the nature of the place;*  
 or, *The legate sends Galba to find out the nature*  
*of the place.*

Subjunctive in  
Relative Clauses.

**Mārcus hominem mīsit quī cōgnōsceret,**  
*Marcus sent a man who should find out.*

**Mārcus hominem mīsit ut cōgnōsceret,** *Marcus sent a man in order that he (himself, Marcus) might find out.*

The last two sentences illustrate the distinction between **quī** and **ut**.

**423.** When a clause introduced by a relative pronoun denotes **cause**, its verb is put in the **subjunctive**.

**Fortissimus erat Mārcus, quī trēs Gallōs cēpisset,** *Marcus was very brave, who captured three Gauls (for he captured three Gauls).*

**424.** Sometimes relative clauses other than those just described have the verb in the subjunctive.

a. This is usually the case when the antecedent is **indefinite** (as, **aliquis**, *anyone*) or general, (as, **omnia**, *all things*). In such a case it is evidently the purpose of the relative clause to define or **characterize the antecedent**.

**Hominem vidēō quī sit caecus,** *I see a man who is blind.*

**Hōc nūntiāvit cuiādam quī esset meus amīcus,** *He told this to one who is my friend.*

b. From this fact all such clauses are called **clauses of characteristic**.

**425. RULE.**—Relative clauses of **purpose, result, cause, and characteristic** take the **subjunctive**.

**426.**

EXAMPLES.

*Cum obsidēs dedissent, pūgnāre nōluērunt, Since they had given hostages, they refused to fight.*

*Cum paucī sint, tamen pūgnābunt, Although they are few, still they will fight.*

**427. RULE.**—**Cum**, when it means *since* Cum Causal or Concessive. or *although*, is used with the **subjunctive**.

**428.**

1. Equitatum omnem prae-mittit, qui videant quas in partēs hostēs iter faciant.

2. Hominem qui nātūram montis cōgnōsceret misit.

3. Equitatum qui sustinēret hostium impetum miserat.

4. Quō aqua portārī posset nihil erat relictum.

5. Lēgātus erat māgnā virtūte, qui interficī quam exercitū ā-missō salūtem petere māllet.

6. Haec cum ita sint fugā salūtem petet.

7. Nullus miles erat qui equitatum rēgis Iubae nōn timēret.

8. Nōn is sum qui proeli periculō perterrear.

9. Tum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum, quae castra minōra oppūgnāret, misit.

10. Duās legiōnēs in interiōrem Galliam qui dūceret lēgātum misit.

11. Quis est qui hōc facere audeat?

12. Sōlī centum erant qui portās dēfendere possent.

13. Hunc lēgātum Caesar idōneum iūdicāverat quem mitteret.

14. Haec arma cui dabō, cum nēminem alium praeter tē videam?

15. Ibi partem suōrum militum trādūcere cōnātī sunt qui cum hoste pūgnārent.

16. Primōs quī flūmen trāns-ierant nostrō equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt.

17. Caesar, aciē instrūctā, equitātum mittit quī hostium impetum sustineat.

18. Multi erant quī hiberna oppugnāre vellent.

#### 429.

1. He will send a horseman to inform <sup>1</sup> the legate.

2. What soldier was there who did not wish to attack the enemy?

3. A hill that is high can be easily defended.

4. A camp which is placed upon the top of a hill cannot be easily captured.

5. Although the Gauls had fled to the forests, he hastened to depart from their country.

6. He wishes to see some one who will tell him about <sup>2</sup> this matter.

7. What high hill is there in this region, which we can easily defend?

8. He thinks that this mountain is much higher than that (222).

9. Although the Gauls have given many hostages to the Germans, they fear that the latter will send another army to attack them (353).

10. He says that he will not fight with a man who is smaller than he (is) (413).

## LESSON LXXIII.

### THE IRREGULAR VERBS FERŌ AND FĪŌ.

Principal Parts: { ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.  
fīō, fierī, factus sum.

**430.** Learn the conjugation of **ferō** and **fīō** (489, 490).

a. **Fīō** is used as the passive of **faciō** (except in some compounds).

b. The **i** is long except when followed by **-er** and in **fit**.

<sup>1</sup> Not infinitive.

<sup>2</sup> **dē**.

## 431.

## 1. Learn to unite

A **genitive** with the **nearest** noun or pronoun.

A **preposition** with its noun. The noun **follows** the preposition.

**Adjectives** with words in the same cases.

The **infinitive**, if **not** following a verb of saying, thinking, etc., with the nearest **following** indicative or subjunctive (155); if following a verb of saying, thinking, etc., with this verb, translating it as the main verb of the quotation, (i.e. the verb introduced in English by "that." Cp. 413).

2. As regards nouns and adjectives, think of the commoner forms and constructions first. Learn to think of

*Hints for Reading.*

A **nominative** as a **subject**.

The **endings -m, -ōs, -ās** as denoting the **object**.

The **ending -a** as denoting, first, the **object** in the accusative neuter plural; then, the **nominative** neuter plural, or else, the nominative singular feminine.

The **ending -ā** as denoting the **ablative** feminine.

An **ablative**, if **alone**, as denoting **cause** or **means**.

An **adjective** standing **alone** (or a **pronoun** standing alone) in the nominative or accusative as referring, if masculine, to people; if neuter, to things.

The **endings -īs, and -ibus** as first, the ablative, and then, the dative.

## 432.

## CURIŌ IN ĀFRICĀ.—IV.

Posterō diē Curiō vallum circum Uticam dūcere parāvit. Multitūdine in oppidō perterritā dē deditiōne omnēs iam loquēbantur, et cum Vārō gerēbant, nē hōc bellō omnium fortūnās perturbārī vellet. Haec cum loquērentur nūntiī prae-missi ab Iubā rēge vēnērunt, quī locūtī sunt illum celeriter venīre cum māgnīs cōpiīs. Nūntiābantur haec eadem Curiōnī, sed quod iam Caesaris rēs secundae<sup>1</sup> in Āfricā nūn-

<sup>1</sup> Caesar's successes against Afranius.

tiātae erant, nihil contrā sē rēgem factūrum esse existimābat.

Sed cum certis nūntiis Curiō cōgnōscit minus quinque et viginti milibus passuum longē ab Uticā Iubae rēgis cōpiās abesse, relictis castris sēsē in Castra Cornēlia rūsus recipit. Ad hunc locum frūmentum portāre castraque conlocāre cōstituit, atque in Siciliam mittit, ut duae legiōnēs reliquusque equitātus ad sē mittātur. Castra haec erant ad bellum dūcendum aptissima natūrā locī et aquae salisque cōpiā et quod ad litus erant. Itaque Curiō reliquās cōpiās exspectāre et bellum dūcere cōstituit.

### 433.

1. While Caesar was waging war in Spain, Curio was fighting in Africa.

2. This was announced to him while he was speaking to his friends in the council.

3. Since the cavalry had become terrified, the legionary soldiers were unable to hold the hill.

4. When this battle had been fought, he set out for the winter camp.

5. He is afraid to do this.

6. He wished them to go home (360, c).

7. When he goes<sup>1</sup> to Gaul he will wage war upon all who refuse to give him hostages.

8. He wishes to place the winter camp in this region, but fears that there is no suitable place.

<sup>1</sup> Future Perfect.

434. WORD-LIST FOR REVIEW.

praeda, praedae	centuriō, -ōnis	impetus, -us
alius, -a, -ud	civitās, -ātis	
certus, -a, -um	facultās, -ātis	aciēs, aciēi
	fīnis, fīnis	diēs, diēi
facilis, facile	opus, operis	rēs, rēi

quod

ab-sum, ab-esse, ā-fui.

possum, posse, potui.

existimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.

perturbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.

persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsi, persuāsus.

sustineō, sustinēre, sustinui, sustentus.

timeō, timēre, timui, —.

cōgō, cōgere, coēgi, cōactus.

cōgnōscō, cōgnōscere, cōgnōvi, cōgnitus.

instruō, instruere, instruxi, instructus.

ponō, ponere, posui, positus.

relinquō, relinquere, reliqui, relictus.

faciō, facere, feci, factus.

fugiō, fugere, fugi, fugitus.

interficiō, interficere, interfeci, interfectus.

recipiō, recipere, recēpi, receptus.

veniō, venire, vēni, ventus.

eō, ire, ivi (ii), (itūrus).

cōnōr, cōnāri, cōnātus.

loquōr, loqui, locūtus.

proficiscor, proficisci, profectus.

sequor, sequi, secūtus.

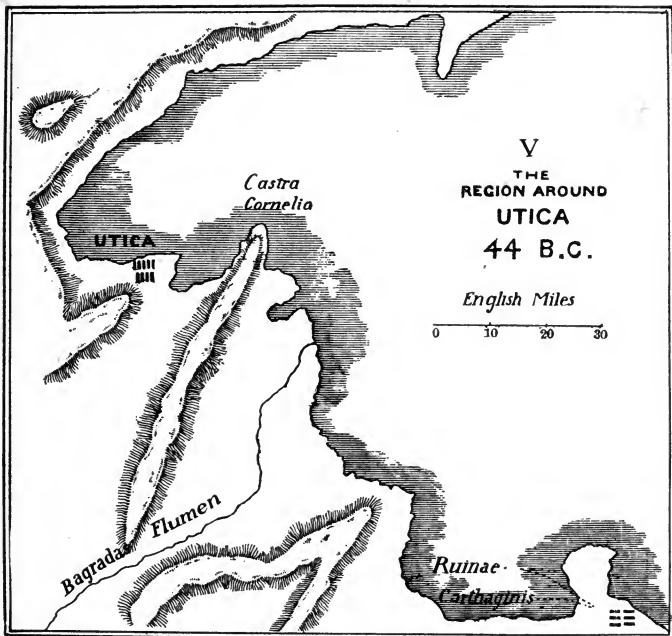
ūtor, ūti, ūsus.

volō, velle, volui.

nōlō, nōlle, nōlui.







## LESSON LXXIV.

## READING LESSONS.

435.

CURIO IN ĀFRICĀ.—V.

His rēbus cōstitūtis ex quibusdam quī ex oppidō fūgerant audit Iubam rēgem rūsus ad ēius terram bellō contendere coāctum esse, atque Saburram, ēius ducem, cum parvīs cōpiīs missum prope Uticam esse. Itaque rem proeliō committere cōstituit.

Equitātum omnem primā nocte ad castra hostium mittere cōstituit, ad flūmen Bagradam, quibus castris prae-erat Suburra, dē quō ante erat auditum, sed rēx Iuba omnibus cōpiīs sequēbātur et sex milibus passuum ab-erat. Equitēs missi nocte ad hostēs nihil timentēs impetum faciunt, multōs interficiunt; complūrēs perterriti fugiunt. Quō factō ad Curiōnem equitēs rūsus veniunt captivōsque ad eum re-dūcunt.

Curiō cum omnibus cōpiīs ex-ierat, cohortibus quīnque castris praesidiō relictis. Profectus milia passuum sex ad equitēs vēnit, et rem gestam cōgnōvit. Captivōs vīdit, et ex iis quaesivit, “Quis castris ad Bagradam flūmen praest?” respondērunt, “Saburra.” Reliqua studiō itineris cōn-ficiendī ex captivīs quaerere praeter-misit, sed, militibus quī proxima signa sequēbantur loquēns, “Vidētisne,” dixit, “captivōrum orātiōnem convenire cum orātiōne eōrum quī ex hoste ad nōs fūgerunt? ab-esse rēgem, parvās esse cōpiās missās, paucis equitibus parēs esse nōn potuerunt. Ad praedam, ad glōriam properāte!”

Equitēs praetereā captōs hominēs equōsque producēbant; itaque Curiōnis militibus studia nōn dē-erant. Equitātui ut sēsē sequeretur imperāvit ipseque multum properāvit, ut ad hostēs ex fugā perterritōs venire posset. Sed equitēs, itinere tōtius noctis cōn-fecti, sequi nōn poterant, atque aliī aliō locō stabant. Iuba rēx, certior factus ā Saburrā dē superiōre proe-

liō duo mīlia eōrum equitum quōs praesidiō circum sē habēbat et partem peditum ad Saburram misit ; ipse cum reliquis cōpiis elephantisque sexāgintā secūtus est. Existimāns praemissis equitibus ipsum ventūrum esse Curiōnem, Saburra cōpiās equitum peditumque instrūxit, cōpiis suis imperāvit ut adventū Curiōnis visō paulātim sē reciperent ; sēsē dixit cum opus esset signum proeli datūrum esse. Curiō, cum hostēs quod ā Saburrā imperātum erat id facere atque sē recipere vidit, existimāns eōs quī superiōre nocte equitibus perterriti fūgissent rūsus fugere, ut sequerētur cōpiās ex locis superiōribus in campum dūxit. Quibus ex locis cum longius esset profectus, dedit suis signum Saburra et circum-iēns aciem imperāvit ut equitēs in aciem Curiōnis mitterentur.

Cum equitēs Saburrae in aciem Curiōnis impetum ita fēcē-runt Curiō nōn dē-erat virtūte, neque dēfessis militibus neque equitibus, paucis et labōre cōn-fectis, studium ad pūgnandum virtūsque dē-erat. Equitēs erant numerō ducenti ; reliquī in itinere steterant. Hī quamcumque in partem impetum faciē-bant, hostēs ex eō locō fugere cōgēbant, sed equis dēfessis nōn longius fugientēs sequi poterant. Equitātus hostium ab utrōque cornū aciem nostram circum-ībant. Cum nostrae co-hortēs ex aciē prō-cucurissent, hostēs celeriter impetum nos-trōrum ex-fugiēbant, rūsusque ad aciem redire cōnātōs novō impetū circum-ībant, ut māgnā cum difficultāte ad suam aciem rūsus venire nostri possent. Novae cōpiae mis-sis ā rēge auxiliis perveniēbant. Nostri dēfessī erant et vulnerātis nūllus tūtus locus erat, quod tōta aciēs equitātū hostium tenēbātur.

Curiō perterritis omnibus ūnam rem reliquam esse existi-māns, suis militibus imperāvit ut proximōs collis caperent. Sed hōs quoque prae-occupāverat missus ā Saburrā equitātus. Tum vērō, nūllā spē salutis relictā, ad summam dēsperātiō-nem nostrī pervēnerunt. Complūrēs, fugientēs, ab equitātū interfectī sunt ; aliī salutem fugā nōn petēbant sed in ipsō locō ubi stābant dēfessī atque sine spē prōcumbēbant.

Ad Curiõnem Domitius, dux equitum, cum paucis equitibus veniẽs, eum salũtem fugã petere et ad castra contendere voluit; hanc ùnam spem eĩ relinqui atque sẽ ab eõ nõn exiũrum dixit. Sed Curiõ numquam sẽ, ã-missõ exercitũ quem ã Caesare sili com-missum accẽpisset, in eĩus cõspectum rũsus venire dixit, atque ita pũgnãns interfectus est.

Equitẽs ex proeliõ pauci sẽ recẽpẽrunt; sed ii qui ad novissimum agmen equõrum re-ficiendõrum causã steterant, fugã tõtius exercitũs visã, salũtem fugã petivẽrunt atque sēsẽ celeter in castra recẽpẽrunt. Militẽs ad ùnum omnẽs interfecti sunt.

Qui in castris praesidiõ ã Curiõne relictĩ erant, hõrum pauci nãvibus in Siciliam fugere potuẽrunt; reliqui Vãrõ, qui ad Uticam erat, sẽ in deditiõnem dedẽrunt. Quõrum complũrẽs Iuba rẽx Vãrõ nõlente interfecit; paucõs captivõs in terram suam misit.

FİNIS.

**436.** (See that the sentences in your Latin translation of this exercise are as long as the English sentences, which follow the Latin idiom.)

The Romans set out with ten cohorts to march through (397, N. 1.) the forest to the winter camp. When they had gone a short distance<sup>1</sup> the Gallic cavalry began<sup>2</sup> to harass the rear rank. While the rear line of march was being thus harassed by the Gallic horsemen, the rest of the Gauls suddenly attacked the three foremost cohorts from two directions, in order that they might throw them into great confusion (greatly disturb them). The foremost soldiers, (though) in confusion, none the less<sup>3</sup> did not flee, but, hastily following the legate with the cohort which was in the rear rank of the three, they seized the nearest hill very quickly. When the line of battle had been

<sup>1</sup> spatium.

<sup>2</sup> coepẽrunt.

<sup>3</sup> tamen.

formed in this place they defended themselves with great bravery for a long time, supposing that the other seven cohorts would come to give them help.

But the other legate, who was over these cohorts, being informed by a few soldiers who had fled at the first attack that the greater part of the soldiers of the first three cohorts had been killed, and that the rest were following in flight,<sup>1</sup> fearing lest his own soldiers would be disturbed, commanded (419, 1) them to withdraw to a suitable place, where,<sup>2</sup> during the rest of the day, he was (engaged in) fortifying<sup>3</sup> a camp.

Meantime<sup>4</sup> the soldiers of the three cohorts, lacking everything of use for fortifying a camp, since their baggage had been captured at the first attack, wearied by the previous march, and so<sup>5</sup> few in number that no chance was given of sending fresh soldiers to stand<sup>6</sup> in the line in the place of those who were wounded or killed, were compelled to defend themselves with their swords and shields.<sup>7</sup> When at length<sup>8</sup> (only) a small part of the day was left the centurions, since many soldiers were wounded or dead, (and) the rest were terrified, supposing that the remaining cohorts were hard pressed by the Gauls and for this reason were unable to send help, fearing also<sup>9</sup> lest they all be killed during the night, persuaded the legate to ask for the chief of the Gauls and confer with (talk with) him as to<sup>10</sup> surrender.<sup>11</sup>

When opportunity was given in this way, the three cohorts, when the legate and six centurions had been given as hostages, surrendered to the Gauls.

<sup>1</sup> fuga. <sup>2</sup> ubi. <sup>3</sup> mūniō, mūnīre. <sup>4</sup> interim. <sup>5</sup> tam. <sup>6</sup> stō, stāre. <sup>7</sup> scūtum. <sup>8</sup> tandem. <sup>9</sup> quoque. <sup>10</sup> dē. <sup>11</sup> dēditiō.

## LESSON LXXV.

437.

EXAMPLES.

DIRECT QUESTIONS.

Ubi est?

*Where is he?*

Ubi erās?

*Where were you?*

Ubi vēnistis?

*Where did you go?*

INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

Cōgnōscam ubi sit,

*I will find out where he is.*

Quaerit ubi sīs,

*He asks where you were.*

Quaesīvit ubi essēs,

*He asked where* Indirect  
Questions.  
*you were.*

Scit ubi vēneritis,

*He knows where you went.*

Scīvit ubi vēnissētis,

*He knew where you went.*

a. Compare these two sets of sentences, and determine from them what constitutes an **indirect question** in **Latin**.

b. Is it the same as an indirect question in English grammar?

c. Notice that indirect questions follow verbs denoting mental action, but that they do **not** follow the rule for indirect statements (413).

d. Notice that they conform to the rule for sequence of tenses (411).

**438. RULE.**—An **indirect question** takes the **subjunctive**.

439.

EXAMPLE.

Quam plurima oppida cēpit, *He took as*  
*many towns as possible.*

Quam with  
Superlative.

This sentence illustrates a use of **quam** with the superlative.

**440.**

1. Ab his quaesivit quae civitatēs in armis essent et quid in bellō possent.

2. Equitibus imperat ut quam m̄ximam fr̄mentum agris hostium ex-portent.

3. Dumnorix apud Sēquanōs pl̄rimum poterat.

4. Eius rei quae esset causa ex ipsis quaesivit.

5. Quam pl̄rimās civitatēs occupāre volēbat.

6. Caesar quam m̄ximis potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit. Quam m̄ximam potest militum numerum cogit.

7. Con-vocātō conciliō et ad id concilium ad-hibitīs centuriōnibus Caesar ex iis quaesivit cūr quaerent aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur: quid timērent? cūr sēsē dē-esse virtūte existimārent?

8. Ariovistus ā Caesare quaerit quid sibi velit; cūr in suās possessiōnēs veniat.

9. Ad Ariovistum lēgātōs Caesar misit; quōs cum in suis castris Ariovistus vidisset, con-clāmāvit quid ad sē venirent. Sed cōnantēs dicere prohibuit.

10. Cum ex captivis quaereret Caesar quam ob rem Ariovistus nōn pūgnāret, dixerunt eās mulierēs quae nūntiarent utrum proelium ex ūsū esset nec-ne, ita dicere, nōn Germānōs superātūrōs esse sī ante novam lūnam proeliō contendissent.

11. Cum ille homō quis sit mihi nūntiare nōlit, eī nōn permittam ut in domum eat.

**441.**

1. We asked what you wanted.

2. He takes as much grain as possible.

3. He asked whether the soldiers wished to fight.

4. They ask who the most powerful man in this state may be.

5. He is informed that they are collecting as many soldiers as possible.

6. When Ariovistus saw the envoys of Caesar, he asked why they had come to his camp.

7. He hurried into Italy by the longest marches possible.

8. He orders (419, 1) his soldiers to carry away as many arms as possible from the camps of the enemy.

9. When this help had been given by the cavalry, the enemy were so pressed by our soldiers that some of them retreated, and some surrendered (126).

10. He says that they will come.

## LESSON LXXVI.

### 442. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

**Conditional** sentences contain two clauses: a **condition** (introduced by *sī*, *if*, or one of its compounds) and a **conclusion**.

443. There are **three classes** of conditional sentences:

#### I. Nothing Implied.

*Sī vēnit, vidērent, If he came, they saw him.*

*Sī veniet, vidēbunt, If he comes, they will see him.*

*Sī id fēcerit, laetus erō, If he does (shall have done) this, I will be glad.*

a. There is nothing in the first two sentences by which one can infer whether the person spoken of came or not.

b. This class makes use of the **indicative** in both clauses.

c. Why is the Latin **future perfect** more exact than the English future in the last sentence?

**RULE.**—**Simple conditional sentences** take the **indicative** in both condition and conclusion.

#### II. Less Vivid Future.

This represents the act as scarcely probable.

*Si veniat, laetus sim, If he should come, I would be glad.*



a. Notice that the **present subjunctive** is used in both clauses.

b. Notice the tenses “**should**” and “**would**”, used in English in this form of conditional sentence.

RULE.—**Less vivid future conditions** take the **present subjunctive** in both condition and conclusion.

### III. Contrary Implied.

In this class one is able to infer whether the condition has been fulfilled.

For example, we say in English :

*If he had come to town, I would have seen him.*

Has he or has he not come to town?

*If he were in the building, I would know it.*

Is he in the building?

**Sī impetum faceret, hostis nōs nōn premeret,** *If he were making an attack, the enemy would not be harassing us.*

**Sī impetum fēcisset, hostis nōs nōn pressisset,** *If he had made an attack, the enemy would not have harassed us.*

a. Notice that the **subjunctive imperfect** is used in both clauses to denote **present time**, and the **subjunctive pluperfect** in both clauses to denote **past time**.

RULE.—**Conditions contrary to fact** take the **imperfect subjunctive** when referring to **present time**, and the **pluperfect subjunctive** when referring to **past time**.

#### 444.

1. **Sī obsidēs dedissent, bellum iīs nōn in-tulisset.**

2. **Sī quidquam Rōmānis accidat, summam in spem imperi obtinendī Dumnorix veniat.**

3. **Nisi quodquam in Caesare sit auxilium, omnēs Galli domō ex-eant.**

4. **Sī quidquam voluissent, vēnissent.**

5. **Id si fiat, māgnō cum periculō eī sit.**

6. **Militibus perterritis Caesar dixit ; “Sī Ariovistus bellum intulerit, quid timeātis? proximā nocte ad hostem pro-**

ficiscar. Sī nēmō praetereā sequātur, tamen ego cum solā decimā legiōne ibō, dē quā nōn dubitō.”

7. Lēgātīs qui ā Caesare missi quaerēbant ut locum conloquiō diceret Ariovistus dixit; “Sī quid mihi ā Caesare operis esset, ego ad eum venirem; si quid ille vult, cūr ille ad mē nōn venit?” Caesar respondit; “Sī ea quae postulō fēceris, amicus tibi erō; si nōn faciēs, ego auxilium Haeduis contrā tē dabō.”

Ariovistus respondit; “Sī ipse populō Rōmānō imperārem quās rēs gerant, tum vērō bonā causā ita mihi imperārēs. Sī Haedui ea quae postulō facient, bellum nōn in-feram; sed si id nōn fēcerint, bellum ācritē in-feram. Sī auxilium Caesar iis det contrā Germānōs, quibuscum nēmō sine māgnō periculō contendit, quid possit?”

8. Cum ea ita sint, tamen vōbiscum bellum inferam.

9. Cum māgnā virtūte hīc miles signum in hostēs in-tulerit, fiet centuriō.

10. Cum hunc rēgem nōn tuleris, illum ferte.

#### 445.

1. If I should ask you for anything, you would give it to me.

2. If he were in the city, I would be there too (436, N. 9).

3. If he had a sword, he would not be able to wound anyone with it.

4. If Ariovistus had not conquered the Haedui, he would not have been attacked by Caesar. If Caesar had not waged war upon him, many more Germans would have crossed the river Rhine.

5. If you wish to speak with me, come to my house.

6. If you had wished to see me, you would have come to me.

7. If you should do this, I would be compelled to be your enemy.

8. If I were your enemy, I would not be giving you aid.

9. If the hostages had been given, there would have been no war.

10. Would we be afraid of them, if they were very brave men ?

## LESSON LXXVII.

446.

## EXAMPLES.

POSITIVE.

NEGATIVE.

Mittam, *let me send.*Nē mittam, *let me not send.*Mittās, }  
Mīseris, } *send.*  
Mitte, }Nē mittās, }  
Nē mīseris, } *do not send.*  
Nōlī mittere, }Mittat, }  
Mīserit, } *let him send.*Nē mittat, }  
Nē mīserit, } *let him not send.*

a. Diagram the usage in the plural in the same way. Commands and Appeals.

b. Observe that both **imperative** and **subjunctive** forms are used.

c. Observe that the **negative** is **nē**.

d. The **imperative** of **nōlō** (**nōlī**, **nōlīte**) with the **infinitive** is frequently used.

447. RULE.—**Commands** are put in the **imperative** or **subjunctive**; **appeals** in the **subjunctive**. The negative is **nē**.

448.

## EXAMPLES.

Cum vīs, venī, *When you wish, come.*Dīcit cum velīs veniās, *He says that you may come when you wish.*Dīxit cum vellēs venīrēs, *He said that you could come when you wished.*Nē moneat, *Let him not advise.*Dīcit nē moneat, *He says that he may not advise.*Dīxit nē monēret, *He said that he should not advise.*

Indirect Discourse:  
Commands and Appeals.

*a.* Notice that after a verb denoting mental action the **imperative venī** in the first sentence is changed to the **subjunctive**, and the **subjunctive moneat** in the fourth remains a **subjunctive**.

*b.* Observe that the rule for Sequence of Tenses (411) is followed.

**449. RULE.**—In **Indirect Discourse** the subjunctive of **Appeals** and **Commands** remains a **Subjunctive**.

The **Imperative** is in Indirect Discourse **changed** to the **Subjunctive**.

**450.** The **three** forms of **Indirect Discourse** have now all been studied :

**Indirect Statements** (413) take the **Infinite** with **Subject Accusative** and the **Subjunctive** in **Subordinate Clauses**.

The Three Forms  
of Indirect Dis-  
course.

**Indirect Questions** (438) take the **Subjunctive**.

**Indirect Commands** (449) take the **Subjunctive**.

The **Subjunctives** throughout **conform** to the **rule for the Sequence of Tenses** (411).

**451.**

I.

Ariovistō Caesar nūntium mīsit ; “ Haec sunt, quae a tē postulō : primum, nē hominum multitudinem trāns Rhēnum flūmen trādūcās, deinde, obsidēs red-ire per-mittās, atque nē Haeduīs bellum inferās.”

Ariovistus respondit ; “ Cum Haeduī superātī sint, obsidēs red-ire nōn per-mittam. Cum vīs, venī ; cōgnōscēs quid Germānī virtūte possint.”

Caesar cum exercitū vēnit et in conloquiō Ariovistō dixit ; “ Nē Haeduīs bellum in-fertō ; obsidēs red-ire per-mittitō ; plūrēs Germānōs trāns Rhēnum nē trā-dūcitō.” Ariovistus respondit ; “ Quid mihi vīs ? cūr in meās possessiōnēs vēnistī ? Sī tē interfecerō, multis prīncipibus populī Rōmānī grātum erit.”

Hōc conloquiō habitō Ariovistus per lēgātōs dixit ; “ Conloquendī finem nē fēceris, sed aut aliquem conloquiō diem cōstitueris aut ex tuīs aliquem ad mē miseris.”

Duōs lēgātōs Cæsar mīsit, quōs cum Ariovistus vīdisset, conclāmāvit, “ Cūr ad mē veniunt ? ” atque eōs hostium in numerō habuit.

## II.

Caesar nūntiāvit haec esse quae postulāret ; nē multitudīnem in Galliam Ariovistus trādūceret, obsidēs red-īre permitteret, nē Haeduīs bellum in-ferret.

Ariovistus respondit sē obsidēs nōn red-īre permittūrum esse ; cum Caesar vellet, venīret.

Caesar in conloquiō postulāvit nē bellum Haeduīs Ariovistus in-ferret ; obsidēs red-īre per-mitteret, plūrēs Germānōs trāns Rhēnum nē trādūceret.

Ariovistus quaesivit quid Caesar vellet, et dixit sī eum interfēcisset id multis Rōmānis grātum futūrum esse.

## 452.

1. The Germans ask why the Romans are demanding that they shall not take hostages from those states of Gaul which they have conquered. They ask why the Romans have come into that part of Gaul which they, and not the former, have conquered. Do the Romans wish to wage war with them? (they ask). If they do, they say, let them come: war is always<sup>1</sup> pleasing to the Germans.

2. They wish me to ask you what you want.

3. You may come if you wish, but do not talk with me.

4. Come to me some other day, since I am unable to give you anything to-day<sup>2</sup> (427).

5. I demand that you do not come to the camp if the legate be unwilling.

<sup>1</sup> semper.<sup>2</sup> hodiē.

## LESSON LXXVIII.

**453. The First (or Active) Periphrastic<sup>1</sup> Conjugation** is formed by combining the **future active participle** with the tenses of the verb **sum**. First Periphrastic Conjugation.

**Tē monitūrus erat**, *He was about to (going to, intending to) advise you.*

**Tē missūrus erit**, *He will be about to send you.*

a. What form of this conjugation has already been used freely?

**454. The Second (or Passive) Periphrastic<sup>1</sup> Conjugation** is of frequent occurrence. It is somewhat puzzling, because it scarcely admits of a literal translation into English. It is used frequently by Caesar and other Latin writers. Second Periphrastic Conjugation.

It is formed by combining the **Gerundive** with the tenses of the verb **sum**.

The **Second Periphrastic Conjugation** is **Passive** and denotes a **necessity** or **duty**.

**Mittendus sum**, *I am to be (must be, ought to be, deserve to be) sent.*

**Mittendus eram**, *I was to be (should have been, ought to have been, deserve to have been) sent.*

**Mittendus erō**, *I shall have to be sent.*

**455. RULE.**—The **gerundive** with the verb **sum** is used to form the **passive (or second) periphrastic conjugation**, denoting **obligation** or **duty**.

**456.** Another peculiarity of this Conjugation is that it uses a **dative** to denote the **doer** or agent, where the ordinary conjugations use the ablative of **agent**. Dative of Agent.

<sup>1</sup> The adjective "periphrastic" and noun "periphrasis" are derived from the Greek. The corresponding Latin derivative is "circumlocution (circum. loquor). "Periphrasis" means "a roundabout method of expression."

**Tibi mittendus sum**, *I must be sent by you.*

**Caesari omnia agenda sunt**, *Everything has to be done by Caesar.*

RULE.—The **agent** with the **gerundive** is expressed by the **dative**.

**457.** The **Impersonal** construction is frequent with this conjugation.

Impersonal means having **no personal** subject. The **clause** is sometimes considered the **subject**.

**Ad urbem exercituī veniendum est**, *The army must come to the city (the necessity of coming to the city is to the army).*

**Mihi pūgnandum est**, *I must fight (the necessity of fighting is to me).*

**458.**

1. Tibi exercitus dūcendus est.
2. Ad montem proximum legiōnibus veniendum est.
3. His cōgnitis Labiēnus existimāvit sibi contendendum esse.
4. Ācrit̄er Galli pūgnāvērunt.
5. Ācrit̄er ā Gallis pūgnātum est.
6. Ācrit̄er Gallis pūgnandum est.
7. Cum ā hostibus premērēmur, tamen nōbis castra ponenda erant.
8. Galbae cum reliquīs cōpiīs proficiscendum est.
9. Duābus legiōnibus atque impedimentis tōtius exercitūs relictis ad Bōiōs veniendum est.
10. Galba cum peditibus ad castra mittendus fuit.
11. Frūmentī inopiā oppidum in deditiōnem Caesari dandum est.
12. Illud mihi nōn dicendum est.
13. In idōneō locō lēgātō castra ponenda sunt.
14. Eī illius gladius capiendus erat.
15. In Gallōs Rōmānis impetus faciendus est.

16. Caesar existimāvit hostium castra sibi oppugnanda esse.

17. Praesidiō in castris relictō omnēs cōpiae ad aquam dūcendae fuērunt.

18. Omnia bene mihi gerenda sunt.

19. Caesari omnia unō tempore erant facienda ; ab opere re-vocandī militēs, aciēs instruenda, signum tubā dandum.

20. His rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar existimāvit cōsiliū sibi capiendum esse ex loci naturā. Erant circum castra Pompēi per-multi collēs. Hōs primum praesidiis tenendōs esse cōstituit. Pompēius quoque cōstituit sibi quam plūrimōs collis quam māximō circuitū occupandōs esse, ut multa eā causā proelia fierent.

21. Cum complūrēs barbari populō Rōmānō bellum inferant, tamen superābuntur.

22. Labiēnus, cum hunc locum occupāvisset, māgnū hostibus terrōrem in-tulit.

#### 459.

1. You must hurry.

2. The Germans must be kept out of Gaul by the Romans.

3. He said that the river had to be crossed.<sup>1</sup>

4. He asked what you were going to do.

5. We must go to the city. He asks why<sup>2</sup> we must go.

6. The legate thought that he ought to send a legion to hold the mountain, since the Gauls were about to attack with large forces.

7. The town must be defended by the soldiers, although one of the two legates is wounded.

8. The signal of battle must be given.

9. If you must make the attack, fight very bravely.

10. He says that we must attack all of the winter camps of the Romans upon the same day.

<sup>1</sup> trāns-eō.

<sup>2</sup> cūr.



## READING LESSONS.

**460.** THE DYING STANDARD BEARER.

In proeliō cum graviter aquilifer vulnerātus esset, vidēns equitēs nostrōs “Hanc aquilam ego,” dixit, “et vivus multōs per annōs māgnā diligentīā dēfendī et nunc moriēns eādē fidē ad Caesarem mittō. Nōlite committere quod ante in exercitū Caesaris nōn accidit incolumemque ad eum dēferte.”

Ita aquila servātur, omnibus primae cohortis centuriōnibus interfectis praeter principem priorem.

**461.** DYING FOR HIS MEN.

Mārcus Petrōnius octāvae legiōnis centuriō, cum portās oppidī Gallōrum excidere cōnātus esset, ā multitudīne Gallōrum superātus ac iam vulnerātus militibus suis quī eum secūtī erant “Quoniam” dixit “mē vōbiscum servāre nōn possum, vestrae certē vitae providēbō, quōs spē glōriae adductus in periculum dūxi. Vōs datā facultāte vōbis providēte.”

Haec locūtus in hostēs contendit duōbusque interfectis reliquōs ā portā paulim summōvit. Cōnantibus auxilium dare suis “Frūstrā” dixit “meae vitae subvenire cōnamini, quī iam gravius vulnerātus sum. Ab-ite dum est facultās, vōsque ad legiōnem recipite.” Ita pūgnāns suis salutī fuit et brevī tempore interfectus est.

**462.** The three selections which follow relate incidents which occurred during Caesar's campaign in Africa. The partisans of the Senate collected in this province after the battle of Pharsalia (245), where Varus and king Juba, who had defeated Curio (361), were still unsubdued. Since Pompey was dead (255) Scipio was declared by them to be the only real “imperator”, or general-in-chief of the Roman government.

**463.** IS CAESAR AN IMPERATOR?

Plancus Caesaris lēgātus petīvit ab eō ut sibi darētur facultās cum Cōnsidiō agendī, sī posset perdūci ad sānitātem. Itaque, datā facultāte, litterās captivō dat perferendās in oppidum ad Cōnsidium. Ad quem cum captivus pervēnisset, litterāsque Cōnsidiō dabat; prius quam acciperet ille “*Ā quō*”, dīxit, “*illās?*” Tum captivus, “*Ab imperātōre Caesare*” Tum Cōnsidius, “*Ūnus est*”, dīxit, “*Scipiō imperātor hōc tempore populi Rōmānī.*” Deinde in cōspectū suō imperāvit ut captivus statim interficerētur, litterāsque dedit hominī certō quī eās ad Scipiōnem perferret.

**464.** LABIENUS MEETS HIS MATCH.

Labiēnus, during Caesar's wars in Gaul, had been long commander of Caesar's most trusted legion, the tenth. He here appears fighting against his former soldiers (cp. 185).

Labiēnus in equō capite nūdō in primā aciē pūgnābat, et nōnumquam legiōnāriōs Caesaris appellābat: “*Quid tū*”, dīxit, “*miles tīrō, tam ferōculus es?*” Tum miles, “*Nōn sum*”, dīxit, “*tīrō, Labiēne, sed dē legiōnē decimā veterānus.*” Tum Labiēnus, “*Nōn āgnōscō*”, dīxit, “*signa decumānōrum.*” Tum miles, “*Iam mē, quis sim, cōgnōscās*”, et statim cassidem dē capite dē-iēcit, ut cōgnōscī ab eō posset, atque statim tēlum in Labiēnum mittere contendit. Equō vulnerātō, dīxit, “*Labiēne, decumānum militem, quī tē petit, cōgnōsce esse.*”

**465.** FAITHFUL UNTIL DEATH.

Ex classe quam ā Siciliā ad Caesarem miserat Alliēnus, nāvis ūna, in quā fuerat Cominius et Ticide, eques Rōmānus, tempestāte Thapsūm dēlāta, excepta est et ad Scipiōnem dēducta. Item altera nāvis ex eādē classe tempestāte ad Aeginūrum dēlāta ā classe Vārī et Octāvī est capta, in quā milītēs veterānī cum ūnō centuriōne et nōn-nūllī tīrōnēs fuē-

runt ; quōs Vārus, servātōs, mīsit ad Scipiōnem. Quī postquam ad eum pervēnērunt, “Nōn vestrā”, dixit, “sponte vōs, sciō, sed illius vestri imperātōris imperiō coāctōs esse cum nōbis optimīs pūgnāre. Quōs quoniam fortūna in nostram dētulit potestātem, sī rem publicam cum optimō quoque dēfendētis, vōbis vitam et praemia dabimus.”

Postquam ita dīxerat Scipiō, cum existimāvisset prō suō beneficiō ab iis grātiās sibi āctum iri, potestātem iis dicendī fēcit. Ex eis centuriō legiōnis quartae decimae “Prō tuō”, dixit, “summō beneficiō, Scipiō, tibi grātiās agō (nōn nam imperātōrem tē appellō) quod mihi vitam captivō polliceris ; et forsitan istō ūterer beneficiō, sī nōn ei summum scelus adiungeretur. Egone contrā Caesarem, imperātōrem meum, eiusque exercitum, prō cūius victōriā amplius sex et trīgintā annīs pūgnāvī, armātus<sup>1</sup> cōnsistam? Nōn ego istud factūrus sum. Contrā cūius cōpiās contendis, nunc cōgnōsce. Cohortem ūnam, quae est tuārum firmissima, cōstitue contrā mē ; ego autem<sup>2</sup> ex hīs militibus quōs nunc in tuā tenēs potestāte, nōn amplius decem summam ; tum ex virtūte nostrā cōgnōscēs quid ā tuis cōpiīs contrā illum agī possit.”

Postquam haec centuriō est locūtus, Scipiō, incēsus, annuit centuriōnibus quid fieri vellet, atque ante pedēs centuriōnem interfēcit. Ut veterānī ā tirōnibus secernerentur imperāvit. “Abducite”, dixit, “istōs scelere affectōs !” Ita extrā vallum dēductī sunt et interfectī.

#### 466. AN INCIDENT AT THE BATTLE OF PHARSALIA.

Erat Crastinus in exercitū Caesaris, quī superiōre annō apud eum primum pilum in legiōne decimā dūxerat, vir magnā virtūte. Hīc, signō datō, “Sequiminī me”, dixit, “manipulārēs meī quī fuistis, et vestrō imperātōri, quam cōstituitis, operam date. Ūnum hōc proelium super-est, quō cōfectō et ille suam dignitātem et nōs libertātem recuperābimus.” Simul<sup>3</sup> vidēs Caesarem, “Faciam”, dixit, “hodiē, imperātōr, ut aut vivō aut mortuō grātiās agās.” . . .

<sup>1</sup> armed.

<sup>2</sup> on the other hand.

<sup>3</sup> at the same time.

In eō proeliō interfectus est etiam fortissimē pugnāns Crastīnus, cūius mentiōnem suprā fēcimus. Neque id fuit falsum, quod ille in pūgnam proficiscēns dixerat. Ita Caesar existimābat, eō proeliō excellentissimam virtūtem Crastīni fuisse.

#### 467. PUGNA PHARSALICA.

The battle of Pharsalia has already been briefly described (245). After Caesar had succeeded in bringing his whole army over from Italy as already described (170) he attempted to shut Pompey in at Dyrrhachium by surrounding his army with entrenchments. In this attempt he was disastrously defeated by Pompey.<sup>1</sup> He retreated rapidly into Thessaly, pursued by Pompey, who was joined by Scipio with reinforcements. It seemed to followers of the latter that success was now certain, and they could not understand why he was reluctant to risk another battle with Caesar's veterans.

Pompēius paucis post diēbus in Thessaliam pervēnit, atque apud tōtum exercitum suis agit grātiās, receptisque omnibus Scipiōnis legiōnibus spēs victōriā augētur. Inter sē dē prae-miis principēs eius exercitūs contendēbant; alii domōs bonaque eōrum quī in castris erant Caesaris petēbant.

Rē frūmentāriā parātā cōfirmātisque militibus et satis longē spatiō temporis ā superiōribus proeliis intermissō temptandum esse Caesar existimāvit quid Pompēius studi pūgnandi habēret. Itaque ex castris exercitum edūxit aciemque instrūxit, sed primō suis locis paulōque ā castris Pompēi longius.

Pompēius, quī castra in colle habēbat, ad infimās partēs montis aciem instruēbat, semper exspectāns si iniquis locis Caesar sē subiceret. Caesar nullā ratiōne ad pūgnam ēlici posse Pompēium existimāns hanc sibi commodissimam belli ratiōnem iūdicāvit, ut castra ex eō locō movēret semperque esset in itineribus, haec exspectāns, ut movendis castris plūribusque adeundis locis commodiōre rē frūmentāriā ūterētur et

<sup>1</sup> An incident of this battle is related in 460.

in itinere ut aliquam occāsiōnem pūgnandī reperiret. His cōstitūtis rēbus signō iam datō vīsum est paulō longius ā vallō aciem Pompēi iisse, ut nōn iniquō locō posse pūgnārī vidērētur. Tum Caesar apud suōs, cum iam esset agmen in portis, “Differendum est,” dixit, “iter nobīs, et dē proeliō cōgitandum est, quod semper voluimus. Simus ad pūgnandum parātī; nōn facile occāsiōnem postea reperiemus.”

Pompēius quoque cōstituerat pūgnāre. Etiam in conciliō superiōribus diēbus dixerat, “Sciō mē paene incredibilem rem pollicērī, sed ratiōnem cōsiliī mēi accipite. Persuāsi equitibus nostris, idque mihi factūrōs esse cōfirmāverunt, ut, cum propius agmina īssent dextrum Caesaris cornū ā parte apertā oppūgnārent et aciē circumventā prius perturbātum eius exercitum pellerent quam ā nobīs tēlum in hostem iacerētur.” Labiēnus quoque, “Nōlī,” dixit, “exīstimāre, hunc esse exercitum quī Galliam Germāniamque superāvit. Omnibus interfūi proeliis. Perexigua pars illius exercitūs superest; māgna pars interiit.” Haec cum dixisset iūrāvit sē nisi victōrem in castra nōn rūsus itūrum esse. Pompēius idem iūrāvit, nec vērō ex reliquīs fuit quisquam quī iūrāre dubitāvit. Haec cum facta sunt in conciliō māgna spēs iis fuit, quod Pompēiō imperātōre nihil frūstrā cōfirmārī vidēbātur.

Caesar, cum ad Pompēi castra prope vēnisset, aciem eius instructam ita vidit. Erant in sinistrō cornū legiōnēs duae quārum ūna prima, altera tertia, appellābātur. In eō locō ipse erat Pompēius. Mediam aciem Scipiō cum legiōnibus Syriacis tenēbat. Cilicēnsis legiō cum cohortibus Hispānis in dextrō cornū erant conlocātae. Hās firmissimās sē habere Pompēius exīstimābat. Reliquae inter aciem mediam cornuaque erant conlocātae. Numerō cohortēs erant centum et decem. Haec erant milia quadrāgintā quinque. Reliquās cohortēs septem in castris castellisque praesidiō posuerat. In dextrō cornū eius erat rivus quīdam, quā causā omnem equitatum cum sagittariis funditoribusque sinistrō cornū posuerat.

Caesar decimam legiōnem in dextrō cornū, nōnam in sinistrō, conlocāverat, et huic sic adiungit octāvam ut paene ūnam

ex duābus efficeret, atque imperāvit ut altera alterī praesidiō esset. Cohortēs in aciē octāgintā cōstitūtās habēbat, quae summa erat milium, duo et viginti. Cohortēs duās castris praesidiō reliquerat. Sinistrō cornū Antōnium, dextrō Sullam, mediae aciēi Domitium praefēcit. Ipse contrā Pompēium cōstitit. Aciē Pompēi visā, timēns nē ā multitudīne equitum dextrum cornū circumvenirētur, celeriter ex cohortibus tertiae aciēi quartam fēcit equitātūque opposuit<sup>1</sup> et quid fieri vellet nūntiāvit monuitque eius diēi victōriam in eārum cohortium virtūte cōstāre. Tertiae aciēi tōtīque exercitūi imperāvit nē concurreret nisi ipse imperāret; sē, cum id fieri vellet, signum datūrum esse.

His cōstitūtis signum dedit. Inter duās aciēs tantum erat relictum spatī ut satis esset ad cursum utriusque exercitūs. Sed Pompēius suis praedixerat ut Caesaris impetum exciperent neve<sup>2</sup> sē locō movērent, ut duplicatō cursū Caesaris milites essent defessi. Sed nostrī milites datō signō cum prōcurrissent atque vidissent nōn concurrī ā militibus Pompēi, usū peritī<sup>3</sup> suās sponte ad medium paene spatium cōstitērunt, parvōque intermissō temporis spatiō rūsus cucurrērunt<sup>4</sup> et statim tela miserunt. Neque vērō milites Pompēi huic rei defuerunt. Et tela missa excēperunt et impetum legiōnum tulerunt et telis missis ad gladiōs rediērunt.

Eōdem tempore equitēs ab sinistrō Pompēi cornū prōcurrērunt. Quōrum impetum noster equitātus nōn tulit, equitēsque Pompēi, hōc ācriōrēs, aciem nostram ā parte apertā circumībant. Quod cum Caesar cōgnōvisset quartae aciēi quam parāverat sex cohortium dedit signum. Illi celeriter prōcurrērunt et in Pompēi equitēs tam ācriter impetum fēcērunt ut eōrum nēmō cōstāret, atque nōn solum locō pellerentur sed fugā montēs altissimōs peterent. Quibus pulsī omnēs sagittārii funditōrēsque sine praesidiō interfecti sunt. Eōdem impetū cohortēs sinistrum cornū pūgnantibus etiam tum in aciē Pompēi circumiērunt.

Eōdem tempore tertiae aciēi, quae sē ad id tempus locō tenuerat, Caesar imperāvit ut prōcurreret. Ita ex duābus

<sup>1</sup> set against.<sup>2</sup> -ve, and.<sup>3</sup> skilled.<sup>4</sup> charged.

partibus eodem tempore aciēs Pompēi oppugnābātur. Militēs eius eā causā impetum sustinere nōn potuērunt, sed omnēs fūgērunt atque ad castra contendērunt.

Caesar, nūllum spatium perterritis dandum esse existimāns, suis militibus imperāvit ut castra oppugnārent. Castra ā cohortibus quae praesidiō erant relictæ ācriter dēfendēbantur; multō etiam ācrius ā Thracibus barbarisque auxiliis. Neque vērō diūtius quī in vallō cōstitēbant multitudinem telōrum sustinere potuērunt, sed multis vulnerātis locum reliquērunt et omnēs ducibus ūsī centuriōnibus tribūnisque militum in altissimōs montēs quī ad castra pertinēbant fūgērunt. Proximā diē in dēditionem Caesarī sē dedērunt.

In hōc proeliō nōn amplius ducentōs milites, sed centuriōnēs circiter trīgintā, Caesar amīsit. Ex Pompēi exercitū circiter milia quindecim interfecta esse vidēbantur, sed in dēditionem vērunt milia vīginti quattuor; multi praetereā fūgērunt; signaque ex proeliō ad Caesarem sunt relāta centum et octōgintā et aquilae novem.

FĪNIS.

TABLES OF DECLENSION AND CONJUGATION.

NOUNS.

**468.** FIRST DECLENSION.—**A** STEMS.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
FEMININE.			
N.	silva	N.	silvae
G.	silvae	G.	silvārum
D.	silvae	D.	silvīs
Ac.	silvam	Ac.	silvās
Ab.	silvā	Ab.	silvīs
V.	(silva)	V.	(silvae)

**469.** SECOND DECLENSION.—**O** STEMS.

SINGULAR.					
M.	N.	M.	M.	N.	
N.	mūrus	oppidum	vir	ager	cōnsilium
G.	mūrī	oppidī	virī	agrī	cōnsilī
D.	mūrō	oppidō	virō	agrō	cōnsiliō
Ac.	mūrum	oppidum	virum	agrum	cōnsilium
Ab.	mūrō	oppidō	virō	agrō	cōnsiliō
V.	(mūre)	(oppidum)	(vir)	(ager)	(cōnsilium)
PLURAL.					
N.	mūrī	oppida	virī	agrī	cōnsilia
G.	mūrōrum	oppidōrum	virōrum	agrōrum	cōnsiliōrum
D.	mūrīs	oppidīs	virīs	agrīs	cōnsiliīs
Ac.	mūrōs	oppida	virōs	agrōs	cōnsilia
Ab.	mūrīs	oppidīs	virīs	agrīs	cōnsiliīs
V.	(mūrī)	(oppida)	(virī)	(agrī)	(cōnsilia)



470.

## THIRD DECLENSION.

## MUTE STEMS.

## SINGULAR.

	M.	M.	N.
N.	princeps	rēx	caput
G.	principis	rēgis	capitis
D.	principī	rēgī	capitī
Ac.	principem	rēgem	caput
AB.	principe	rēge	capite
V.	(princeps)	(rēx)	(caput)

## PLURAL.

N.	principēs	rēgēs	capita
G.	principum	rēgum	capitum
D.	principibus	rēgibus	capitibus
Ac.	principēs	rēgēs	capita
AB.	principibus	rēgibus	capitibus
V.	(principēs)	(rēgēs)	(capita)

## LIQUID STEMS.

## SINGULAR.

	M.?	M. & F.	N.
N.	cōsul	homō	litus
G.	cōsulis	hominis	litoris
D.	cōsulī	hominī	litorī
Ac.	cōsulem	hominem	litus
AB.	cōsule	homine	litore
V.	(cōsul)	(homō)	(litus)

## PLURAL.

N.	cōsulēs	hominēs	litora
G.	cōsulum	hominum	litorum
D.	cōsulibus	hominibus	litoribus
Ac.	cōsulēs	hominēs	litora
AB.	cōsulibus	hominibus	litoribus
V.	(cōsulēs)	(hominēs)	(litora)

STEMS IN *i*.

## SINGULAR.

	M. & F.	F.	F.	N.
N.	hostis	nūbēs	urbs	animal
G.	hostis	nūbis	urbis	animālis
D.	hostī	nūbī	urbī	animālī
Ac.	hostem	nūbem	urbem	animal
Ab.	hoste	nūbe	urbe	animālī
V.	(hostis)	(nūbēs)	(urbs)	(animal)

## PLURAL.

N.	hostēs	nūbēs	urbēs	animālia
G.	hostium	nūbium	urbium	animālium
D.	hostibus	nūbibus	urbibus	animālibus
Ac.	hostīs, -ēs	nūbīs, -ēs	urbīs, -ēs	animālia
Ab.	hostibus	nūbibus	urbibus	animālibus
V.	(hostēs)	(nūbēs)	(urbēs)	(animālia)

## 471. FOURTH DECLENSION.—U STEMS.

## SINGULAR.

	M.	N.
N.	cursus	cornū
G.	cursūs	cornūs
D.	cursuī, -ū	cornū
Ac.	cursum	cornū
Ab.	cursū	cornū
V.	(cursus)	(cornū)

## PLURAL.

	M.	N.
N.	cursūs	cornua
G.	cursuum	cornuum
D.	cursibus	cornibus
Ac.	cursūs	cornua
Ab.	cursibus	cornibus
V.	(cursūs)	(cornua)

## 472.

## Domus, F.

## SINGULAR.

N.	domus
G.	domūs, domī
D.	domuī, domō
Ac.	domum
Ab.	domū, domō
V.	(domus)

## PLURAL.

N.	domūs
G.	domuum, domōrum
D.	domibus
Ac.	domūs, domōs
Ab.	domibus
V.	(domūs)

## 473. FIFTH DECLENSION.—E STEMS.

SINGULAR.	MASC. & FEM.	PLURAL.
N. diēs		N. diēs
G. diēī		G. diērum
D. diēī		D. diēbus
Ac. diem		Ac. diēs
Ab. diē		Ab. diēbus
V. (diēs)		V. (diēs)

## ADJECTIVES.

## 474. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

		SINGULAR.		
MASCULINE.		FEMININE.		NEUTER.
N. bonus		bona		bonum
G. bonī		bonae		bonī
D. bonō		bonae		bonō
Ac. bonum		bonam		bonum
Ab. bonō		bonā		bonō
V. (bone)		(bona)		(bonum)
PLURAL.				
N. bonī		bonae		bona
G. bonōrum		bonārum		bonōrum
D. bonīs		bonīs		bonīs
Ac. bonōs		bonās		bona
Ab. bonīs		bonīs		bonīs
V. (bonī)		(bonae)		(bona)

## SINGULAR.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N.	liber	libera	liberum
G.	liberī	liberae	liberī
D.	liberō	liberae	liberō
Ac.	liberum	liberam	liberum
Ab.	liberō	liberā	liberō
V.	(liber)	(libera)	(liberum)

## PLURAL.

N.	liberī	liberae	libera
G.	liberōrum	liberārum	liberōrum
D.	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
Ac.	liberōs	liberās	libera
Ab.	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
V.	(liberī)	(liberae)	(libera)

## 475.

## I. THIRD DECLENSION.

## SINGULAR.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N.	ācer	ācris	ācre
G.	ācris	ācris	ācris
D.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
Ac.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
Ab.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
V.	(ācer)	(ācris)	(ācre)

## PLURAL.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N.	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
G.	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
D.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Ac.	ācrīs, -ēs	ācrīs, -ēs	ācria
Ab.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
V.	(ācrēs)	(ācrēs)	(ācria)

## SINGULAR.

	M. & F.	N.
N.	facilis	facile
G.	facilis	facilis
D.	facilī	facilī
Ac.	facilem	facile
Ab.	facilī	facilī
V.	(facilis)	(facile)

## PLURAL.

	M. & F.	N.
N.	facilēs	facilia
G.	facilium	facilium
D.	facilibus	facilibus
Ac.	facilīs, -ēs	facilia
Ab.	facilibus	facilibus
V.	(facilēs)	(facilia)

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
N. audāx	audāx	N. audācēs	audācia
G. audācis	audācis	G. audācium	audācium
D. audācī	audācī	D. audācibus	audācibus
Ac. audācem	audāx	Ac. audācīs, -ēs	audācia
Ab. audācī, -e	audācī, -e	Ab. audācibus	audācibus
V. (audāx)	(audāx)	V. (audācēs)	(audācia)

## 2. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
N. altior	altius	N. altiōrēs	altiōra
G. altiōris	altiōris	G. altiōrum	altiōrum
D. altiōrī	altiōrī	D. altiōribus	altiōribus
Ac. altiōrem	altius	Ac. altiōrēs, -īs	altiōra
Ab. altiōre, -ī	altiōre, -ī	Ab. altiōribus	altiōribus
V. (altior)	(altior)	V. (altiōrēs)	(altiōra)

## 3. DECLENSION OF PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
N. amāns	amāns	N. amantēs	amantia
G. amantis	amantis	G. amantium	amantium
D. amantī	amantī	D. amantibus	amantibus
Ac. amantem	amāns	Ac. amantēs	amantia
Ab. amante, -ī	amante, -ī	Ab. amantibus	amantibus
V. (amāns)	(amāns)	V. (amantēs)	(amantia)

## PRONOUNS.

476.

DEMONSTRATIVE.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. hic	haec	hōc	N. hī	hae	haec
G. hūius	hūius	hūius	G. hōrum	hārum	hōrum
D. huic	huic	huic	D. hīs	hīs	hīs
Ac. hunc	hanc	hōc	Ac. hōs	hās	haec
AB. hōc	hāc	hōc	AB. hīs	hīs	hīs

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. ille	illa	illud	N. illi	illae	illa
G. illius	illius	illius	G. illōrum	illārum	illōrum
D. illi	illī	illī	D. illis	illis	illis
Ac. illum	illam	illud	Ac. illōs	illās	illa
AB. illō	illā	illō	AB. illis	illis	illis

M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. is	ea	id	N. eī, ii	eae	ea
G. ēius	ēius	ēius	G. eōrum	eārum	eōrum
D. eī	eī	eī	D. eis, iis	eis, iis	eis, iis
Ac. eum	eam	id	Ac. eōs	eās	ea
AB. eō	eā	eō	AB. eis, iis	eis, iis	eis, iis

M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. iste	ista	istud	N. istī	istae	ista
G. istius	istius	istius	G. istōrum	istārum	istōrum
D. istī	istī	istī	D. istis	istis	istis
Ac. istum	istam	istud	Ac. istōs	istās	ista
AB. istō	istā	istō	AB. istis	istis	istis

	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
N.	idem	eadem	idem	}	eïdem	eaedem	e'adem
					iïdem		
G.	ëiusdem	ëiusdem	ëiusdem		eörundem	eärundem	eörundem
D.	eïdem	eïdem	eïdem	}	eïsdem	eïsdem	eïsdem
					iïsdem	iïsdem	iïsdem
Ac.	eundem	eandem	idem		eösdem	eäsdem	eadem
Ab.	eödem	eädem	eödem	}	eïsdem	eïsdem	eïsdem
					iïsdem	iïsdem	iïsdem

	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
N.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	N.	ipsi	ipsae	ipsa
G.	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	G.	ipsörum	ipsärum	ipsörum
D.	ipsi	ipsi	ipsi	D.	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
Ac.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	Ac.	ipsös	ipsäs	ipsa
Ab.	ipsö	ipsä	ipsö	Ab.	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

## 477.

## RELATIVE.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.				
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.		
N.	quï	quae	quod	N.	quï	quae	quae
G.	cüius	cüius	cüius	G.	quörum	quärum	quörum
D.	cui	cui	cui	D.	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac.	quem	quam	quod	Ac.	quös	quäs	quae
Ab.	quö	quä	quö	Ab.	quibus	quibus	quibus

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.				
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.		
N.	quis	quae	quid	N.	quï	quae	quae
G.	cüius	cüius	cüius	G.	quörum	quärum	quörum
D.	cui	cui	cui	D.	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac.	quem	quam	quid	Ac.	quös	quäs	quae
Ab.	quö	quä	quö	Ab.	quibus	quibus	quibus

## 478.

## I. PERSONAL.

SINGULAR.		
N.	ego	tü
G.	mei	tui
D.	mihi	tibi
Ac.	më	të
Ab.	më	të

	PLURAL.		(SINGULAR AND PLURAL ALIKE.)
N.	nōs	vōs	—
G.	nostrūm, -trī	vestrūm, -trī	suī
D.	nōbis	vōbis	sibi
Ac.	nōs	vōs	sē, sēsē
AB.	nōbis	vōbis	sē, sēsē

## 2. INDEFINITE.

## SINGULAR.

N.	aliquis	aliqua	aliquid, aliquod
G.	alicūius	alicūius	alicūius
D.	alicūi	alicūi	alicūi
Ac.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid, aliquod
AB.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

## PLURAL.

N.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
G.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
D.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Ac.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
AB.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

## SINGULAR.

N.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam, quoddam
G.	cūiusdam	cūiusdam	cūiusdam
D.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
Ac.	quendam	quandam	quiddam, quoddam
AB.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

## PLURAL.

N.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
G.	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
D.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
Ac.	quōs iam	quāsdam	quaedam
AB.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam



479.

NUMERALS.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	ûnus	ûna	ûnum		N. milia
G.	ûnîus	ûnîus	ûnîus	mille,	G. milium
D.	ûnî	ûnî	ûnî	indeclinable.	D. milibus
Ac.	ûnum	ûnam	ûnum		Ac. milia
Ab.	ûnô	ûnâ	ûnô		Ab. milibus

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
N.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
G.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
D.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
Ac.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs	tria
Ab.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

CARDINALS.

1. ûnus, -a, -um
2. duo, duae, duo
3. trēs, tria
4. quattuor
5. quinque
6. sex
7. septem
8. octô
9. novem
10. decem
11. ûndecim
12. duodecim
13. tredecim
14. quattuordecim
15. quindecim
16. sêdecim, *or* sexdecim
17. septendecim
18. duodêviginti
19. ûndêviginti

ORDINALS.

- 1st. primus, -a, -um
- 2d. secundus (*or* alter)
- 3d. tertius, -a, -um
- 4th. quartus, etc.
- 5th. quintus
- 6th. sextus
- 7th. septimus
- 8th. octāvus
- 9th. nōnus
- 10th: decimus
- 11th. ûndecimus
- 12th. duodecimus
- 13th. tertius decimus
- 14th. quartus decimus
- 15th. quintus decimus
- 16th. sextus decimus
- 17th. septimus decimus
- 18th. duodêvicêsimus
- 19th. ûndêvicêsimus

20. vīgintī	20th. vicēsīmus
21. { vīgintī ūnus, <i>or</i> ūnus et vīgintī	21st. { vicēsīmus p̄m̄us, <i>or</i> ūnus et vicēsīmus
22. vīgintī duo <i>or</i> duo et vīgintī	22d. vicēsīmus secundus, <i>or</i> alter et vicēsīmus
28. duodētrīgintā	28th. duodētricēsīmus
29. ūndētrīgintā	29th. ūndētricēsīmus
30. trīgintā	30th. tricēsīmus
40. quadrāgintā	40th. quadrāgēsīmus
50. quīnquāgintā	50th. quīnquāgēsīmus
60. sexāgintā	60th. sexāgēsīmus
70. septuāgintā	70th. septuāgēsīmus
80. octōgintā	80th. octōgēsīmus
90. nōnāgintā	90th. nōnāgēsīmus
100. centum	100th. centēsīmus
101. centum ūnus <i>or</i> centum et ūnus	200th. ducentēsīmus
102. centum duo <i>or</i> centum et duo	1000th. millēsīmus
200. ducentī, -ae, -a	800. octingentī, -ae, -a
300. trecentī, -ae, -a	900. nōngentī, -ae, -a
400. quadringentī, -ae, a	1,000. mille
500. quīngentī, -ae, -a	2,000. duo milia
600. sēscentī, -ae, -a	10,000. decem milia
700. septingentī, -ae, -a	100,000. centum milia

## REGULAR VERBS.

480.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Principal Parts : **Amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus.**Stem : **amā-**.

INDICATIVE.

**Active Voice.****Passive Voice.**

PRESENT TENSE.

PRESENT TENSE.

*I love, I am loving, I do love.**I am loved, I am being loved.*

SINGULAR.

SINGULAR.

amō, *I love.*  
 amās, *Thou lovest.*  
 amat, *He loves.*

amor, *I am loved.*  
 amāris,<sup>1</sup> *Thou art loved.*  
 amātur, *He is loved.*

PLURAL.

PLURAL.

amāmus, *We love.*  
 amātis, *You love.*  
 amant, *They love.*

amāmur, *We are loved.*  
 amāmini, *You are loved.*  
 amantur, *They are loved.*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

*I loved, was loving, etc.**I was loved, etc.*

amābam amābāmus  
 amābās amābātis  
 amābat amābant

amābar amābāmur  
 amābāris or -re amābāmini  
 amābātur amābantur

FUTURE TENSE.

*I shall love, etc.**I shall be loved, etc.*

amābō amābimus  
 amābis amābitis  
 amābit amābunt

amābor amābimur  
 amāberis or -re amābimini  
 amābitur amābuntur

PERFECT TENSE.

*I have loved, I loved, etc.**I have been (was) loved, etc.*

amāvī amāvimus  
 amāvistī amāvistis  
 amāvit amāvērunt or -re

amātus, { sum  
 -a, -um { es amātī, { sumus  
 { est -ae, -a { estis  
 { sunt

<sup>1</sup> Or amāre.

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

*I had loved, etc.**I had been loved, etc.*

amāveram	amāverāmus	amātus, { -a, -um	eram	amātī, { -ae, -a	erāmus		
amāverās	amāverātis					erās	erātis
amāverat	amāverant					erat	erant

## FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

*I shall have loved, etc.**I shall have been loved, etc.*

amāverō	amāverimus	amātus, { -a, -um	erō	amātī, { -ae, -a	erimus		
amāveris	amāveritis					eris	eritis
amāverit	amāverint					erit	erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

amem	amēmus	amer	amēmur
amēs	amētis	amēris or -re	amēminī
amet	ament	amētur	amentur

## IMPERFECT.

amārem	amārēmus	amārer	amārēmur
amārēs	amārētis	amārēris or -re	amārēminī
amāret	amārent	amārētur	amārentur

## PERFECT.

amāverim	amāverimus	amātus, { -a, -um	sim	amātī, { -ae, -a	simus		
amāveris	amāveritis					sīs	sītis
amāverit	amāverint					sit	sint

## PLUPERFECT.

amāvissem	amāvissēmus	amātus, { -a, -um	essem	amātī, { -ae, -a	essēmus		
amāvissēs	amāvissētis					essēs	essētis
amāvisset	amāvissent					esset	essent

## Active Voice.

## Passive Voice.

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

amā, *love thou.*  
amāte, *love ye.*

amāre, *be thou loved.*  
amāmini, *be ye loved.*

## FUTURE.

amātō, *thou shalt love.*  
amātō, *he shall love.*  
amātōte, *you shall love.*  
amantō, *they shall love.*

amātor, *thou shalt be loved.*  
amātor, *he shall be loved.*  
amantor, *they shall be loved.*

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. amāre, *to love.*

amārī, *to be loved.*

PERF. amāvisse, *to have loved.*

amātum (-am, -um)esse, *to have been loved.*

FUT. amātūrum (-am, -um) esse, *to be about to be loved.*

amātum irī, *to be about to be loved.*

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES. amāns, -antis, *loving.*

PERF. amātus, -a, -um, *having*

FUT. amātūrus, -a, -um, *about to love.*

*been loved.*

## GERUND.

G. amandī, *of loving.*  
D. amandō, *for loving.*  
AC. amandum, *loving.*  
AB. amandō, *by loving.*

## GERUNDIVE.

amandus, -a, -um.

## SUPINE.

AC. amātum, *to love.*  
AB. amātū, *to love.*

## CONJUGATION BY ENDINGS.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Active Voice.

## Passive Voice.

## PRESENT TENSE.

am-ō	am-ā-mus	am-o-r	am-ā-mur
“ -ā-s	“ “ -tis	“ -ā-ris	“ “ -minī
“ a-t	“ a-nt	“ “ -tur	“ a-ntur

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

am-ā-ba-m	am-ā-bā-mus	am-ā-ba-r	am-ā-bā-mur
“ “ bā-s	“ “ “ -tis	“ “ bā-ris <i>or re</i>	“ “ “ -minī
“ “ ba-t	“ “ ba-nt	“ “ “ -tur	“ “ ba-ntur

## FUTURE TENSE.

am-ā-b-ō	am-ā-bi-mus	am-ā-bo-r	am-ā-bi-mur
“ “ -bi-s	“ “ “ -tis	“ “ -be-ris <i>or re</i>	“ “ “ -minī
“ “ “ -t	“ “ bu-nt	“ “ -bi-tur	“ “ -bu-ntur

## PERFECT TENSE.

amāv-ī	amāv-imus	amātus,	amātī,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sumus} \\ \text{estis} \\ \text{sunt} \end{array} \right.$	
“ -istī	“ -istis	-a, -um			$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{es} \\ \text{-ae, -a} \end{array} \right.$
“ -it	“ -ērunt <sup>1</sup>	est			

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

amāv-era-m	amāv-erā-mus	amātus,	amātī,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erāmus} \\ \text{erātis} \\ \text{erant} \end{array} \right.$	
“ erā-s	“ “ -tis	-a, -um			$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{eram} \\ \text{erās} \\ \text{erat} \end{array} \right.$
“ era-t	“ era-nt	erat			

## FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

amāv-er-ō	amāv-eri-mus	amātus,	amātī,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erimus} \\ \text{eritis} \\ \text{erunt} \end{array} \right.$	
“ -eri-s	“ “ -tis	-a, -um			$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erō} \\ \text{eris} \\ \text{erit} \end{array} \right.$
“ “ -t	“ “ -nt	erit			

<sup>1</sup> Or amāv-ēre.

## 481. SECOND CONJUGATION.—Ē VERBS.

moneō *advise.*

Principal Parts : moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus.

## INDICATIVE.

## Active.

## Passive.

## PRESENT.

*I advise, etc.**I am advised, etc.*

moneō	monēmus	moneor	monēmur
monēs	monētis	monēris or -re	monēmini
monet	monent	monētur	monentur

## IMPERFECT.

*I was advising, etc.**I was advised, etc.*

monēbam	monēbāmus	monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbās	monēbātis	monēbāris or -re	monēbāmini
monēbat	monēbant	monēbātur	monēbantur

## FUTURE.

*I shall advise, etc.**I shall be advised, etc.*

monēbō	monēbimus	monēbor	monēbimur
monēbis	monēbitis	monēberis or -re	monēbimini
monēbit	monēbunt	monēbitur	monēbuntur

## PERFECT.

*I have advised, I advised, etc. I have been (was) advised, etc.*

monuī	monuimus	monitus,	{ sum	monitī,	{ sumus
monuistī	monuistis	-a, -um	{ es	-ae, -a	{ estis
monuit	monuerunt		{ est		{ sunt
	or ēre				

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had advised, etc.**I had been advised, etc.*

monueram	monuerāmus	monitus,	{ eram	monitī,	{ erāmus
monuerās	monuerātis	-a, -um	{ erās	-ae, -a	{ eratis
monuerat	monuerant		{ erat		{ erant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have advised, etc.**I shall have been advised, etc.*

monuerō	monuerimus	monitus, -a, -um	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erō} \\ \text{eris} \\ \text{erit} \end{array} \right.$	monitī, -ae, -a	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erimus} \\ \text{eritis} \\ \text{erunt} \end{array} \right.$
monueris	monueritis				
monuerit	monuerint				

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

moneam	moneāmus	monear	moneāmur
moneās	moneātis	moneāris or -re	moneāminī
moneat	moneant	moneātur	moneantur

## IMPEFECT.

monērem	monērēmus	monērer	monērēmur
monērēs	monērētis	monērēris or -re	monērēminī
monēret	monērent	monērētur	monērentur

## PERFECT.

monuerim	monuerimus	monitus, -a, -um	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sim} \\ \text{sis} \\ \text{sit} \end{array} \right.$	monitī, -ae, -a	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sīmus} \\ \text{sītis} \\ \text{sint} \end{array} \right.$
monueris	monueritis				
monuerit	monuerint				

## PLUPERFECT.

monuissē	monuissēm	monitus, -a, -um	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{essem} \\ \text{essēs} \\ \text{esset} \end{array} \right.$	monitī, -ae, -a	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{essēm} \\ \text{essētis} \\ \text{essent} \end{array} \right.$
monuissēs	monuissētis				
monuisset	monuissent				

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

monē, *advise thou.*monēre, *be thou advised.*monēte, *advise ye.*monēminī, *be ye advised.*

## FUTURE.

monētō, *thou shalt advise.*monētor, *thou shalt be adv'd.*monētō, *he shall advise.*monētor, *he shall be advised.*monētōte, *you shall advise.*monento, *they shall advise.*monentor, *they shall be adv'd.*



## INFINITIVE.

PRES. monēre, <i>to advise.</i>	monērī, <i>to be advised.</i>
PERF. monuisse, <i>to have adv'd.</i>	monitum (-am, -um) esse,
FUT. monitūrum (-am, -um)	<i>to have been advised.</i>
esse, <i>to be about to advise.</i>	monitum irī, <i>to be about to be advised.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. monēns, -entis, <i>advising.</i>	
FUT. monitūrus, -a, -um,	GER. monendus, -a, -um.
<i>about to advise.</i>	
	PERF. monitus, -a, -um, <i>advised, having been advised.</i>

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

G. monendī, <i>of advising.</i>	
D. monendō, <i>for advising.</i>	
AC. monendum, <i>advising.</i>	AC. monitum, <i>to advise.</i>
AB. monendō, <i>by advising.</i>	AB. monitū, <i>to advise, to be advised.</i>

## 482. THIRD CONJUGATION.—E-VERBS.

regō, *rule.*

Principal Parts: regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus.

## INDICATIVE.

## Active.

## Passive.

## PRESENT.

<i>I rule, etc.</i>		<i>I am ruled, etc.</i>	
regō	regimus	regor	regimur
regis	regitis	regeris or -re	regimini
regit	regunt	regitur	reguntur

## IMPERFECT.

<i>I was ruling, etc.</i>	<i>I was ruled, etc.</i>
regēbam, etc.	regēbar, etc.
(See the same tense of moneō.)	

## FUTURE.

<i>I shall rule, etc.</i>		<i>I shall be ruled, etc.</i>	
regam	regēmus	regar	regēmur
regēs	regētis	regēris, or -re	regēminī
reget	regent	regētur	regentur

## PERFECT.

<i>I have ruled, etc.</i>	<i>I have been ruled.</i>
rēxī	rēctus (-a, -um) sum
rēxistī, etc.	rēctus es, etc.
(Compare the same tenses of <b>amō</b> or <b>moneō</b> .)	

## PLUPERFECT.

<i>I had ruled, etc.</i>	<i>I had been ruled, etc.</i>
rēxeram, etc.	rēctus (-a, -um) eram, etc.
(Compare the same tenses of <b>amō</b> or <b>moneō</b> .)	

## FUTURE PERFECT.

rēxerō, etc.	rēctus (-a, -um) erō, etc.
(Compare the same tenses of <b>amō</b> or <b>moneō</b> .)	

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

regam	regāmus	regar	regāmur
regās	regātis	regāris or -re	regāminī
regat	regant	regātur	regantur

## IMPERFECT.

regerem	regerer
regerēs, etc.	regerēris or -re, etc.
(The first e of the ending is short; except for this the endings are like those of the same tense in <b>moneō</b> .)	

## PERFECT.

rēxerim	rēctus (-a, -um) sim
rēxeris, etc.	rēctus sīs, etc.
(Compare the same tenses of <b>amō</b> and <b>moneō</b> .)	

## PLUPERFECT.

rēxissem, etc.	rēctus (-a, -um) essem, etc.
(Compare the same tenses of <b>amō</b> and <b>moneō</b> .)	

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

rege, *rule thou.*regere, *be thou ruled.*regite, *rule ye.*regimini, *be ye ruled.*

## FUTURE.

regitō, *thou shalt rule.*regitor, *thou shalt be ruled.*regitō, *he shall rule.*regitor, *he shall be ruled.*regitōte, *ye shall rule.*reguntō, *they shall rule.*reguntor, *they shall be ruled.*

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. regere, *to rule.*regī, *to be ruled.*PERF. rēxisse, *to have ruled.*rēctum, (-am, -um) esse, *to have been ruled.*FUT. rēctūrum (-am, -um) esse, *to be about to rule.*rēctum irī, *to be about to be ruled.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. regēns, -entis, *ruling.*

PRES. ———

FUT. rēctūrus, a, -um, *about to rule.*

GER. regendus, -a, -um.

PERF. rēctus, -a, -um, *ruled, having been ruled.*

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

G. regendī, *of ruling.*D. regendō, *for ruling.*AC. regendum, *ruling.*AC. rēctum, *to rule.*AB. regendō, *by ruling.*AB. rēctū, *to rule, to be ruled.*

## THIRD CONJUGATION. VERBS IN -iō.

**483. Verbs of the third conjugation in iō** retain the *i* of the stem before *a*, *o*, *u*, and *ē*, and in the **gerund** and **present participle**. Hence some of the forms of the present stem are similar to the forms of the fourth conjugation.

## 484. (See 483.)

Principal parts: **Capiō, capere, cēpī, captum.**

Active Voice.		INDICATIVE.	Passive Voice.	
		PRESENT.		
<i>I take, am taking, do take, etc.</i>			<i>I am taken, etc.</i>	
capīō	capimus	capior	capimur	
capis	capitis	caperis	capimini	
capit	capiunt	capitur	capiuntur	
		IMPERFECT.		
<i>I took, was taking, did take, etc.</i>			<i>I was taken, etc.</i>	
capīēbam, etc.			capīēbar, etc.	
		FUTURE.		
<i>I shall take, etc.</i>			<i>I shall be taken, etc.</i>	
capiam	capiemus	capiar	capiemur	
capies	capietis	capieris or -re	capiemini	
capiet	capient	capientur	capientur	
		PERFECT.		
<i>I have taken, took, etc.</i>			<i>I have been (was) taken, etc.</i>	
cēpī	cepisti, etc.		captus (-a, -um) sum es, etc.	
		PLUPERFECT.		
<i>I had taken, etc.</i>			<i>I had been taken, etc.</i>	
cēperam, etc.			captus (-a, -um) eram, etc.	
		FUTURE PERFECT.		
<i>I shall have taken, etc.</i>			<i>I shall have been taken, etc.</i>	
cēperō, etc.			captus (-a, -um) erō, etc.	
SUBJUNCTIVE.				
PRESENT.				
capiam	capiamus	capiar	capiamur	
capias	capiatīs	capiaris or -re	capiamini	
capiat	capiant	capiantur	capiantur	

## IMPERFECT.

caperem, caperēs, etc.          caperer, -erēris or -re, etc.

## PERFECT.

cēperim, cēperis, etc.          captus (-a, -um) sim, sīs, etc.

## PLUPERFECT.

cēpissē, cēpissēs, etc.          captus (-a, -um) essem, essēs,  
etc.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. cape, take thou.          capere, be thou taken.  
capite, take ye.          capimini, be ye taken.  
FUT. capitō, thou shalt take,          capitor, thou shalt be taken,  
etc.          etc.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. capere, to take.          capī, to be taken.  
PERF. cēpisse, to have taken.          captum (-am, um) esse, to  
FUT. captūrum (-am, -um)          have been taken.  
esse, to be about to          captum irī, to be about to be  
take.          taken.

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. capiēns, -ientis, taking.          GER. capiendus.  
FUT. captūrus, about to take.          PERF. captus, having been  
taken.

## GERUND.

G. capiendī, of taking, etc.

## SUPINE.

AC. captum, to take.  
AB. captū, to take, to be taken.

## 485. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Principal Parts : **Audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus.**

## INDICATIVE.

## Active Voice.

## Passive Voice.

## PRESENT.

*I hear, etc.**I am heard, etc.*

audiō      audīmus  
 audīs      audītis  
 audit      audiunt

audiōr      audīmur  
 audīris or -re      audīminī  
 audītur      audiuntur

## IMPERFECT.

*I was hearing, etc.**I was heard, etc.*

audiēbam, etc.

audiēbar, etc.

(See the same tenses of **capiō.**)

## FUTURE.

*I will hear, etc.**I will be heard, etc.*

audiam, audiēs, etc.

audiar, audiēris or re, etc.

(See the same tenses of **capiō.**)

## PERFECT.

*I have heard, I heard.**I have been (was) heard.*

audīvī, audivistī, etc.

audītus (-a, -um) sum, es,  
etc.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had heard, etc.**I had been heard, etc.*

audiveram, etc.

audītus (-a, -um) eram,  
etc.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have heard, etc.**I shall have been heard, etc.*

audiverō, etc.

audītus (-a, -um) erō etc.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

audiam, audiās, etc.      audiar, audiāris or -re, etc.  
 (See the same tenses of capiō.)

## IMPERFECT.

audīrem	audīrēmus	audīrer	audīrēmur
audīrēs	audīrētis	audīrēris or -re	audīrēminī
audīret	audīrent	audīrētur	audīrentur

## PERFECT.

audiverim, audiveris, etc.      auditus (-a, um) sim, sīs,  
 etc.

## PLUPERFECT.

audivissem, etc.      auditus (-a, um) essem,  
 etc.

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

audī, hear thou.	audīre, be thou heard.
audīte, hear ye.	audīminī, be ye heard.

## FUTURE.

audītō, thou shalt hear.	audītor, thou shalt be heard.
audītō, he shall hear.	audītor, he shall be heard.
audītōte, ye shall hear.	_____
audiuntō, they shall hear.	audiuntor, they shall be heard.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. audīre, to hear.	audīrī, to be heard.
PERF. audīvisse, to have heard.	auditum (-am, -um) esse, to have been heard.
FUT. audītūrum (-am, -um) esse, to be about to hear.	auditum irī, to be about to be heard.

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. audīēns, -entis, hear- ing.	PERF. audītus, -a, -um, heard, having been heard.
FUT. audītūrus, -a, -um, about to hear.	

## GERUND.

- G. audiendī, *of hearing.*  
 D. audiendō, *for hearing.*  
 AC. audiendum, *hearing.*  
 AB. audiendō, *by hearing.*

## GERUNDIVE.

audiendus, -a, -um.

## SUPINE.

- AC. auditum, *to hear.*  
 AB. auditū, *to hear.*

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

486. I. Sum (STEMS es, fu), *be.*

Principal Parts: **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.**

## INDICATIVE.

## PRESENT.

## SINGULAR.

**sum**, *I am.*  
**es**, *thou art.*  
**est**, *he (she, it) is.*

## PLURAL.

**sumus**, *we are.*  
**estis**, *you are.*  
**sunt**, *they are.*

## IMPERFECT.

**eram**, *I was,*  
**erās**, *thou wast.*  
**erat**, *he was.*

**erāmus**, *we were.*  
**erātis**, *you were.*  
**erant**, *they were.*

## FUTURE.

**erō**, *I shall be.*  
**eris**, *thou wilt be.*  
**erit**, *he will be.*

**erimus**, *we shall be.*  
**eritis**, *you will be.*  
**erunt**, *they will be.*

## PERFECT.

**fuī**, *I have been, I was.*  
**fuistī**, *thou hast been, wast.*  
**fuit**, *he has been, he was.*

**fuimus**, *we have been, we were.*  
**fuistis**, *you have been, you were.*  
**fuērunt**, or **fuēre**, *they have been, they were.*



## PLUPERFECT.

fueram, <i>I had been.</i>	fuerāmus, <i>we had been.</i>
fuerās, <i>thou hadst been.</i>	fuerātis, <i>you had been.</i>
fuerat, <i>he had been.</i>	fuerant, <i>they had been.</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT.

fuerō, <i>I shall have been.</i>	fuerimūs, <i>we shall have been.</i>
fueris, <i>thou wilt have been.</i>	fueritis, <i>you will have been.</i>
fuerit, <i>he will have been.</i>	fuerint, <i>they will have been.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

sim	sīmus
sīs	sītis
sit	sint

## IMPERFECT.

essem	essēmus
essēs	essētis
esset	essent

## PERFECT.

fuerim	fuerimus
fueris	fueritis
fuerit	fuerint

## PLUPERFECT.

fuissem	fuissemūs
fuisēs	fuisētis
fuisset	fuisissent

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

es, <i>be thou.</i>	este, <i>be ye.</i>
---------------------	---------------------

## FUTURE.

estō, <i>thou shalt be.</i>	estōte, <i>ye shall be.</i>
estō, <i>he shall be.</i>	suntō, <i>they shall be.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

PRESENT. esse, *to be.*PERFECT. fuisse, *to have been.*

FUTURE. } futūrum, (-am, -um) esse, *to be about to be.*  
 } fore.

## PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE. futūrus, -a, -um, *being about to be.*

2. **possum, posse, potuī, —, be able, can.**

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRES. possum	possumus	possim	possimus
potes	potestis	possis	possitis
potest	possunt	possit	possint
IMP. poteram	poterāmus	possem	possēmus
FUT. poterō	poterimus		
PERF. potuī	potuimus	potuerim	potuerimus
PLUP. potueram	potuerāmus	potuissem	potuissēmus
F. P. potuerō	potuerimus		

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. posse                      PERF. potuisse

## 487.

**volō, velle, voluī, —, be willing, will, wish.**

**nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, be unwilling, will not.**

**mālō, mälle, māluī, —, be more willing, prefer.**

## INDICATIVE.

PRES. volō	nōlō	mālō
vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
vult	nōn vult	māvult
volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
IMP. volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUT. volam, volēs, etc.	nōlam, nōlēs, etc.	mālam, mālēs, etc.
PERF. voluī	nōluī	māluī
PLUP. volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
F. P. voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES. velim	nōlium	mālim
velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
velit	nōlit	mālit
velimus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
velint	nōlint	mālint

SUBJUNCTIVE — (*Continued.*)

IMP. vellem	nōllem	māllem
PERF. voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
PLUP. voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	nōlī
	nōlite
FUT.	nōlitō, etc.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. velle	nōlle	mālle
PERF. voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. volēns	nōlēns
--------------	--------

488.

Eō, *go.*

Principal Parts: Eō, ire, iī<sup>1</sup> (or ivī) (itūrus).

INDICATIVE.

PRES. eō	imus
	is itis
	it eunt

IMPERF. ibam

FUT. ibō

PERF. iī (ivī)

PLUP. ieram (iveram)

FUT. PERF. ierō

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	i	ite
FUT.	itō	itōte
	itō	euntō

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. iēns. GEN. euntis

FUT. itūrus, -a, -um

SUPINE.

AC. itum

AB. itū

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES. eam, etc.

IMPERF. irem

PERF. ierim

PLUP. issem

INFINITIVE.

PRES. ire

PERF. isse

FUT. itūrum (-am, -um) esse

GERUND.

G. eundī

D. eundō

AC. eundum

AB. eundō

<sup>1</sup> The contracted form is the commoner.

489. **Ferō**, bear, carry.Principal Parts : **Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.****Active.****Passive.**

INDICATIVE.

PRES.	ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
	fers	fertis	ferris <i>or</i> -re	ferimini
	fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
IMPERF.	ferēbam		ferēbar	
FUT.	feram		ferar	
PERF.	tulī		lātus (-a, -um) sum	
PLUP.	tuleram		lātus (-a, -um) eram	
FUT. PERF.	tulerō		lātus (-a, -um) erō	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	feram		ferar	
IMPERF.	ferrem		ferrer	
PERF.	tulerim		lātus (-a, -um) sim	
PLUP.	tulīsssem		lātus (-a, -um) essem	

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	fer	ferte	ferre	ferimini
FUT.	fertō	fertōte	fertor	
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	ferre		ferri	
PERF.	tulisse		lātum (-am, -um) esse	
FUT.	lātūrum (-am, -um) esse		lātum iri	

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	ferēns	PERF. lātus
FUT.	lātūrus (-a, -um)	

GERUND.

GERUNDIVE.

G.	ferendi	ferendus
D.	ferendō	
AC.	ferendum	
AB.	ferendō	

SUPINE.

AC.	lātum
AB.	lātū

490.

**Fīō**, *be made, become.*

	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
PRES.	fīō	fīmus	PRES.	fīam
	fīs	fītis		
	fīt	fīunt		
IMPERF.	fīēbam		IMPERF.	fīerem
FUT.	fīam			
PERF.	factus sum		PERF.	factus sim
PLUP.	factus eram		PLUPERF.	factus essem
FUT. PERF.	factus erō			

	IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVE.	
PRES.	fī	fīte	PRES.	fīrī
			PERF.	factum (-am, -um) esse
			FUT.	factum irī

## PARTICIPLES.

GERUNDIVE. faciendus, -a, -um

PERFECT. factus, -a, -um.

## LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS.

---

<b>Ab., Abl.,</b> Ablative.	<b>Interrog.,</b> Interrogative.
<b>Ac., Acc.,</b> Accusative.	<b>M., Mas.,</b> Masculine.
<b>Adj.,</b> Adjective.	<b>N., Neut.,</b> Neuter.
<b>Adv.,</b> Adverb.	<b>N., Nom.,</b> Nominative.
<b>Conj.,</b> Conjunction.	<b>Perf.,</b> Perfect.
<b>Cp.,</b> Compare.	<b>Pers.,</b> Personal, Person.
<b>D., Dat.,</b> Dative.	<b>Plup., Pluperf.,</b> Pluperfect.
<b>Demon.,</b> Demonstrative.	<b>Poss.,</b> Possessive.
<b>Dep.,</b> Deponent.	<b>Prep.,</b> Preposition.
<b>F., Fem.,</b> Feminine.	<b>Pres.,</b> Present.
<b>F. P.,</b> Future Perfect.	<b>Rel.,</b> Relative.
<b>Fut.,</b> Future.	<b>Sing.,</b> Singular.
<b>Fut. Perf.,</b> Future Perfect.	<b>Subj.,</b> Subjunctive.
<b>G., Gen.,</b> Genitive.	<b>Voc.,</b> Vocative.
<b>Imp., Imperf.,</b> Imperfect.	<b>W.,</b> With.
<b>Indef.,</b> Indefinite.	

## VOCABULARY.

The *genitives* of nouns are given, to indicate the *declension*.

Nouns of the *first* declension are *feminine*, unless otherwise stated.

Nouns of the *second* declension in *-us* are *masculine*.

Nouns of the *second* declension in *-um* are *neuter*.

The principal parts of *verbs* of the *first conjugation* marked "I." are like those of **amō**.

If the principal parts of a compound verb are not given (as **ab-dūcō**, **ab-eō**), it is because they are similar to those of the verb from which they are derived (as **dūcō**, **eō**).

**ā**, **ab**, prep. w. abl., 80, *by*,  
*from*.

**ab-dūcō**, *lead away*.

**ab-eō**, *go away*.

**ab-ripuit** (**ab-ripitō**), *took* (or  
*tore*) *off*.

**ab-s-tineō** (**-tinēre**, **-tinuī**,  
**-tentus**), *hold back*, *abstain*.

**ab-sum** (**ab-esse**, **ā-fuī**),  
302, *be away*, *be distant*.

**ac**, conj., *and*. (Before con-  
sonants only.)

**ac-cidō** (**-cidere**, **-cidī**, —),  
*happen*.

**ac-cipiō** (**-cipere**, **-cēpī**, **-cep-  
tus**), *receive*.

**ācer**, **ācris**, **ācre**, adj., *keen*,  
*eager* (i-stem).

**aciēs**, **ēī**, f., 302, *line of*  
*battle*.

**ācritēr**, adv., *keenly*, *eagerly*.

**ad**, prep. w. acc., 145, *to*  
(denoting place to which),  
*at*. With numerals, *about*.

**ad-dūcō**, *lead to*.

**ad-hibeō** (**-hibēre**, **-hibuī**,  
**-hibitus**), *furnish*, *employ*  
[**ad-habeō**].

**ad-iungō** (**-iungere**, **-iūnxī**,  
**-iūctus**), *unite*.

**ad-sum** (**ad-esse**, **af-fuī**), *be*  
*present*.

**adolēscēns**, **-ntis**, m. (and  
f.), *young man*, *youth*  
(i-stem).

**ad-ventus**, **-ūs**, m., *arrival*  
[**ad-veniō**].

**aedificō**, I., *build*.

**aeger**, **-gra**, **-grum**, adj.,  
*sick*, *feeble*.

**aegrē**, adv., *with difficulty*,  
*hardly*.

- af-ferō (af-ferre, at-tulī, al-lātum), *bring to* [ad-ferō].
- af-ficiō (-ficere, -fēcī, -fectus), *affect, some one (in some manner)* [ad-faciō].
- ager, agrī, m., 59, *field*.  
Plural, *the country, as distinguished from the town*.
- agmen, -inis, n., 158, *army on the march, a marching column*.
- āgnōscō, āgnōscere, āgnōvī, āgnōtūs, *recognize*. (Cp. cōgnōscō.)
- agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, *conduct, perform, do*.
- aliquis, -qua, -quid, *indef. pron., some one, any one*.
- alius, -a, -ud (gen., -īus), *adj., 321, another, other; alius . . . alius, one . . . another*.
- alter, -era, -erum (gen., -īus), *adj., the other (of two); alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other*.
- altus, -a, -um, *adj., 54, high, deep*.
- amat, *loves*.
- amīcītia, -ae, *friendship*.
- amīcus, -ī, 47, *friend*.
- ā-mittō, *lose*.
- amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus, I., 80, *to like or love*.
- amplius, *adv., more widely*.
- animus, -ī, *mind, consciousness*.
- an-nuō (-nuere, -nuī, -nūtus), *to nod*.
- annus, -ī, m., 145, *year*.
- ante, *prep. w. acc., before*.
- ante-sīgnānus, -ī, *a soldier whose position was in front of the standard*.
- apertus, -a, -um, *adj., open, exposed*.
- ap-pellō, I., *call to, address*.
- apud, *prep. w. acc., near to, in the presence of*.
- aqua, -ae, 289, *water*.
- aquila, -ae, *an eagle. The principal standard of a legion*.
- aquilifer, -erī, m. [aquila, ferō], *an eagle-bearer or standard-bearer*.

The *genitives* of nouns are given, to indicate the *declension*.

Nouns of the *first declension* are *feminine*, unless otherwise stated.

Nouns of the *second declension* in *-us* are *masculine*.

Nouns of the *second declension* in *-um* are *neuter*.

The principal parts of *verbs* of the *first conjugation* marked "I." are like those of **amō**.

If the principal parts of a compound verb are not given (as **ab-dūcō, ab-eō**), it is because they are similar to those of the verb from which they are derived (as **dūcō, eō**).



- arma**, -ōrum (in plural only), 65, *weapons (of all kinds, both for attack and defence)*.  
**armātūrae**. See *levis*.  
**ascēsus**, -ūs, m., *ascent*.  
**atque**, 91, *and*.  
**audeō**, audēre, ausī, ausus, *dare*.  
**audiō**, audīre, audīvī, audītus, *hear*.  
**augeō**, augēre, auxī, auctus, *increase*.  
**aut**, conj., *or*; aut... aut, *either... or*.  
**auxilium**, -ī, 116, *aid or help*. Plural usually *auxiliaries or light-armed troops*.  
**avus**, -ī, *grandfather*.  
**ā-vertō** (-vertere, -vertī, -versus), *turn away*.  
**ballista**, -ae, *a machine for throwing stones, used in war*.  
**balteus**, -ī, *belt*.  
**barbarus**, -a, -um, adj., 86, *uncivilized*.  
**bellum**, -ī, 71, *war*.  
**bene**, adv. [**bonus**], 247, *well*.  
**beneficium**, -ī [**bene-faciō**], *kindness*.  
**bonus**, -a, -um, adj., 91, 240, *good*.  
**brevis**, -e, adj., *brief (i-stem)*.  
**campus**, -ī, *a level place, a plain*.  
**capiō**, capere, cēpī, captus, 289, *take*.  
**captīvus**, -ī, 47, *prisoner*.  
**captus est**, *was captured*.  
**caput**, -itis, n., *head*.  
**cassis**, -idis, f., *helmet*.  
**cāsus**, -ūs, m., *accident, misfortune*.  
**castellum**, -ī, *a fortified place, fort*.  
**castra**, -ōrum (in plural only), 111, *camp*.  
**causa**, -ae, *cause*.  
**celeriter**, adv., 247, *quickly*.  
**celerius**, adv., comp. of *celeriter*.  
**centum**, num. adj., indeclinable, *hundred*.  
**centuriō**, -ōnis, m., 321, *centurion*.  
**certē**, adv., *assuredly, surely*.  
**certus**, -a, -um, adj., 348, *certain, trustworthy*.  
**cibus**, -ī, *food*.  
**citerior**, -ius, adj., *hither, nearer*.  
**circuitus**, -ūs, m., *a circuit*.  
**circum**, adv. and prep. w. acc., *around, about*.  
**circum-eō**, } *surround*.  
**circum-veniō**, }

- cīvis, -is, m.** (and f.), *citizen* (i-stem).
- cīvitās, -ātis, f.**, 377, *a state or nation*.
- clam, adv.**, *secretly*.
- classis, -is, f.**, 171, *fleet* (i-stem).
- cōgitō, I.**, *think*.
- cōgnōscō, cōgnōscere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus**, 348, *learn about, recognize, examine*.
- cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coactus** [co-agō], 317, *collect, compel*.
- cohors, -rtis, f.**, 247, *cohort* (i-stem).
- collis, -is, m.**, 158, *hill* (i-stem); **summus collis**, 158, *top of the hill*.
- colōnia, -ae, colony**.
- com-**, in compounds for **cum**.
- coma, -ae, hair**.
- com-mittō, 271, bring together**; **proelium com-mittere, to engage in battle**.
- commodus, -a, -um, adj.**, *convenient, proper*.
- com-plūrēs, -a** (in plural only), *very many*.
- con-cidō (-cidere, -cidī, —), fall**.
- concilium, -ī, 59, council**.
- con-clāmō, I., exclaim**.
- con-currō (-currere, -currī, -cursus), run together** (from opposite directions).
- cōn-ficiō (-ficere, -fēcī, -fectus), to complete, exhaust**.
- cōn-firmō, I., encourage, confirm**.
- con-locō, I., 96, to place, station**.
- con-loquium, -ī, a conference** (cum-loquor).
- cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus, 405, dep., attempt, try**.
- cōnsilium, -ī, 59, advice, plan, skill, prudence**.
- cōn-sistō (-sistere, -stitī, -stitum), stand, stop**.
- cōn-spectus, -ūs, m., a sight, view**.
- cōn-stituit, determined**.
- cōn-stituō (-stituere, -stituī, -stitūtus), establish, station, determine**.

The *genitives* of nouns are given, to indicate the *declension*.

Nouns of the *first* declension are *feminine*, unless otherwise stated.

Nouns of the *second* declension in *-us* are *masculine*.

Nouns of the *second* declension in *-um* are *neuter*.

The principal parts of *verbs* of the *first conjugation* marked "I." are like those of **amō**.

If the principal parts of a compound verb are not given (as **ab-dūcō, ab-eō**), it is because they are similar to those of the verb from which they are derived (as **dūcō, eō**).

- cōn-stō** (-stāre, -stetī, -stātus, Cp. **dō**), *stand firm, stop* (intrans.).
- con-tendō** (-tendere, -tendī, -tentum), 256, *strive, hasten*; sometimes, *to fight*.
- continenter**, adv., *continuously*.
- con-tineō** (-tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus), 233, *to hold together*; passive also, *is bounded*.
- contrā**, adv. and prep. w. acc., *opposite to, against*.
- con-veniō**, *agree, meet*.
- con-vocō**, I., *call together*.
- cōpia**, -ae, 41, *abundance*; plural also *troops*.
- cornū**, -ūs, n., *horn, wing of an army*.
- crēdō**, **crēdere**, **crēdidī**, **crēditus**, *believe*.
- cum**, conj., *when, since* (causal), *although*.
- cum**, prep. w. abl., 80, *together with, with* (denoting accompaniment).
- cūr?** adv., *wherefore?*
- cursus**, -ūs, m., *a running*.
- dare sē in dēditōnem**, *to surrender himself (herself), themselves*.
- dat**, *gives*.
- dē**, prep. w. abl., *from, about, concerning, of*.
- decumānus**, -a, -um, adj., *of or belonging to the tenth (legion)*. W. **porta**, *rear*.
- dēditō**, -iōnis, f., *surrender*.
- dē-fendō** (-fendere, -fendī, -fēnsus), 256, *defend*.
- dē-ferō**, *bear away*.
- dēfessus**, -a, -um, adj., 54, *tired, weary*.
- dē-figō** (-figere, -fixī, -fixus), *fix, fasten*.
- dē-iciō** (-icere, -iēcī, -iectus), *throw down*.
- de-inde**, adv., *then, secondly*.
- dē-mittō**, *to lower*.
- dē-pōnō**, *lay aside, set down*.
- dēspēratiō**, -ōnis, f., *desperation*.
- dē-sum**, *fail, lack, be away*.
- dexter**, -era, -erum, adj., *right (hand)*.
- dīcit**, *says*.
- dīcō**, **dicere**, **dīxī**, **dictus**, 264, *say*.
- diēs**, -ēī, m. and f., 289, *day*; **multō diē**, *late in the day*.
- dif-ferō** (**dif-ferre**, **dis-tulī**, **dī-lātus**), *to change*.
- difficilis**, -e, adj., *difficult*.
- difficultās**, -ātis, f., *difficulty*.
- dīgnitās**, -ātis, f., *dignity*.
- dīligenter**, adv., *diligently*.
- dīligentia**, -ae, *diligence*.
- dī-mittō**, *send away*.
- diū**, adv., *for a long time*.

- diūtius, adv. Comp. of  
 diū.  
 dixit, said.  
 dō, dare, dedī, datus, 104,  
 give.  
 domus, -ī or -ūs (see 472),  
 f., 420, house, home.  
 dōnum, -ī, gift.  
 dubitō, I., hesitate.  
 dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus,  
 264, lead.  
 dum, conj., while.  
 duplicō, I., to double.  
 dux, ducis, m. and f. (dūcō),  
 a leader.  
 ē, ex, prep. w. abl., 191,  
 from, out from, out of.  
 edō, edere, ēdī, ēsus, eat.  
 ē-dūcō, lead away.  
 ef-ficiō (-ficere, -fēcī, -fec-  
 tus), accomplish, execute,  
 make.  
 ego, meī (dat., mihi; acc.,  
 abl., mē), pers. pron. I.  
 elephantus, -ī, elephant.  
 ē-liciō (-licere, -licuī or  
 -lēxī, -licitus), entice, lure  
 forth.
- eō, ire, ivī (iī), (itūrus),  
 488, to go.  
 eques, -itis, m., 133, horse-  
 man.  
 equitātus, -ūs, m., 264, cav-  
 alry.  
 equus, -ī, 47, horse; ex equō,  
 on horseback.  
 erat, was.  
 est, is.  
 et, 41, and; et...et, both...  
 and.  
 etiam, adv. and conj., even.  
 ē-vocō, I., call forth.  
 ex. See ē.  
 excellēns, gen. -ntis, adj.,  
 excellent.  
 ex-cidō (-cidere, -cidī, -cī-  
 sus), cut down.  
 ex-cipiō (-cipere, -cēpī, -cep-  
 tus), receive, draw out, cap-  
 ture.  
 ex-eō, go away.  
 exercitus, -ūs, m., 215, army.  
 ex-fugiō, flee away.  
 ex-istīmō, I., 396, think,  
 suppose.  
 ex-ivit (plural, -ivērunt),  
 went away.

The *genitives* of nouns are given, to indicate the *declension*.

Nouns of the *first declension* are *feminine*, unless otherwise stated.

Nouns of the *second declension* in *-us* are *masculine*.

Nouns of the *second declension* in *-um* are *neuter*.

The principal parts of *verbs* of the *first conjugation* marked "I." are like those of *amō*.

If the principal parts of a compound verb are not given (as *ab-dūcō*, *ab-eō*), it is because they are similar to those of the verb from which they are derived (as *dūco*, *eō*).

**ex-spectō**, I., *await, expect*.  
**extrā**, prep. with acc., *outside*.  
**extrēmus**, -a, -um, adj., 240, *extreme, outermost*.  
  
**facilis**, -e, adj., 348, *easy* (i-stem).  
**facile**, adv., 247, *easily*.  
**faciō**, **facere**, **fēcī**, **factus**, 294, *do, make*.  
**factiō**, -ōnis, f., (*political*) *party*.  
**facultās**, -ātis, f., 396, *ability, opportunity, supply*.  
**falsus**, -a, -um, adj., *false*.  
**ferō**, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātus**, *to bear* (489).  
**ferōculus**, -a, -um, adj., *ferocious*; [**ferox**, (*fierce*) -ulus, a diminutive here expressing *contempt*.]  
**fertilis**, -e, adj., *fertile*.  
**fidēs**, -eī, f., *trust, trustworthiness*.  
**fīdus**, a, -um, adj., *faithful*.  
**fīlia**, -ae, *daughter*.  
**fīlius**, -ī, 96, *son*.  
**fīnis**, -is, m., 405, *limit, end*; plural, *boundaries, hence, country, land* (i-stem).  
**fīō**, **fieri**, **factus**, passive of **faciō** (490) *become, be made*.  
**fīrmus**, -a, -um, adj., *firm*.  
**flō**, I., *blow*.  
**flūmen**, -inis, n., 145, *river*.

**forsitan**, adv., *perhaps*.  
**fortis**, -e, adj., *brave* (i-stem).  
**fortiter**, adv., *bravely*.  
**fortūna**, -ae, 140, *fortune, chance*.  
**fortūnātus**, -a, -um, adj., *fortunate*.  
**frāter**, **frātris**, m., *brother*.  
**frūmentāria**, adj., f. See **rēs**.  
**frūmentum**, -ī, n., 65, *grain, provisions*.  
**frūstrā**, adv., *vainly*.  
**fuga**, -ae, *flight*.  
**fuge**, *flee!*  
**fugiō**, **fugere**, **fūgī**, **fugitus**, 363, *flee*.  
**funditor**, -ōris, m., *slinger. A light-armed soldier who threw stones with a sling*.  
**gerō**, **gerere**, **gessī**, **gestus**, 215, *to do, wage*.  
**gladius**, -ī, 71, *sword*.  
**glōria**, -ae, *glory*.  
**grātia**, -ae, *favor*; **grātiās agere**, *to thank*.  
**grātus**, -a, -um, adj., 54, *pleasing, acceptable* (refers to things and animals).  
**gravis**, -e, adj., *heavy, burdened, severe* (i-stem).  
**graviter**, adv., *heavily, severely*.  
  
**habet**, *has*.  
**habeō**, **habēre**, **habuī**, **habitus**, 184, *have*.

- habuit** (plural **habuērunt**),  
*has had, had.*
- hīc, haec, hōc**, demons.  
pron., *this*; also, as pers.  
pron., *he, she, it* (476).
- hiems, -emis, f.**, *winter.*
- hīberna, -ōrum, n.** (in  
plural only), 65, *winter-*  
*quarters.* (The full form,  
**castra hīberna**, is seldom  
used.)
- hodiē, for hōc diē**, *to-day.*
- homō, -inis, m.** (and f.), 145,  
*man.*
- hōra, -ae, hour.**
- hostis, -is, m.** (and f.), 165,  
*enemy (i-stem).*
- ibī, adv.**, 65, *in that place.*
- īdem, eadem, idem**, demon.  
pron., *same.*
- idōneus, -a, -um, adj.**, 96,  
*suitable.* (Referring to  
places or people.)
- īgnis, -is, m.**, *fire (i-stem).*
- ille, illa, illud**, demon.  
pron., *that*; also as pers.  
pron., *he, she, it* (476).
- impedīmentum, -ī, 116.**
- imperātor, -ōris, m.**, *a title*  
*of honor given to a general*  
*by acclamation of the sol-*  
*diers after his first victory.*  
*General-in-chief.*
- imperium, -ī, dominion, rule,**  
*supreme command.*
- imperō, I., command.** (Fol-  
lowed by **ut**.)
- impetus, -ūs, m.**, 294, *attack.*
- im-pōnō, place upon, impose.**
- in, prep.** with acc. and abl.,  
47; with acc., *into, against*;  
with abl., *in, on.*
- in-**, equivalent sometimes to  
English prefix *un-*.
- in-cendit, burned.**
- in-cendō (-cendere, -cendī,**  
**-census), to burn, be angry.**
- in columis, -e, unharmed.**
- in-crēbuit, increased.**
- in-crēdibilis, -e, adj. (crēdō),**  
*incredible (i-stem).*
- inferior, -ius, adj.**, 240,  
*lower.*
- in-ferō (in-ferre, in-tulī, il-**  
**lātus), carry or bring to**  
*or into*; **bellum inferre, to**  
*wage war.*

The *genitives* of nouns are given, to indicate the *declension*.

Nouns of the *first declension* are *feminine*, unless otherwise stated.

Nouns of the *second declension* in *-us* are *masculine*.

Nouns of the *second declension* in *-um* are *neuter*.

The principal parts of *verbs* of the *first conjugation* marked "I." are like those of **amō**.

If the principal parts of a compound verb are not given (as **ab-dūcō, ab-eō**), it is because they are similar to those of the verb from which they are derived (as **dūcō, eō**).

- īnfimus**, -a, -um, adj., 240, *lowest*.
- īnfṛā**, adv. and prep. w. acc., *below*.
- in-īquus**, -a, -um, adj., *unequal*.
- in-opia**, -ae, 140, *lack*.
- īn-struō** (-struere, -strūxī, -strūctus), 302, *construct*.  
Of troops, *to draw up*.
- inter**, adv. and prep. w. acc., *among, between*.
- inter-eō**, *perish*.
- interfectus est**, *was killed*.
- inter-ficiō** (-ficere, -fēcī, -fectus), 321, *kill*.
- interim**, adv., *meanwhile*.
- inter-īvit** (plural -ivērunt), *perished*.
- inter-mittō**, *omit, discontinue*.
- inter-pōnō**, *place between, interpose*.
- inter-sum**, *be between*.
- intrā**, adv. and prep. w. acc., *within, inside*.
- ipse**, -a, -um, demon. adj. and pron., *self*.
- is, ea, id**, demon. pron., *this*.  
Also as pers. pron., *he, she, it* (476).
- iste, ista, istud**, demon. pron., *that (of yours)*.
- ita**, adv., 104, *thus*.
- ita-que**, conj., *and so, and thus*.
- item**, adv., *in the same manner*.
- iter, itineris**, n., 184, *a march, journey, road*.
- iterum**, adv., *again*.
- īvit** (plural **ivērunt**), *went*.
- iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus**, *throw*.
- iam**, adv., *already*.
- iūdi-cō**, I, *judge, examine*.
- iūrō**, I, *take an oath*.
- labor, -ōris**, m., *labor*.
- labōrō**, I., 86, *to work*.
- laetus**, -a, -um, adj., *joyful*.
- lapis, -idis**, n., *stone*.
- lātus**, -a, -um, adj., *wide*.
- laudat**, *praises*.
- laudō**, I., *to praise*.
- lēgātus, -ī**, 47, *legate, lieutenant, envoy*.
- legiō, -ōnis**, f., 158, *legion*.
- legiōnārius**, -a, -um, adj., 289, *belonging to a legion, legionary*.
- levis, -e**, adj., *light (in weight)*, (i-stem).
- levis armātūrae**, *light-armed soldiers*.
- liber, -era, -erum**, adj., 59, *free*. **liberī, -ōrum**, m. (in plu. only), 59, *children*.
- libertās, -ātis**, f., *liberty*.
- littera, -ae**, *letter*.
- lītus, -oris**, n., 171, *coast*.
- locus, -ī** (plural **locī** and **loca**), 96, *place, position*.

**longus**, -a, -um, adj., 54,  
*long.*

**longē**, adv., 247, *far, widely.*

**loquor**, loquī, locūtus, 405,  
*speak, say.*

**lūna**, -ae, *moon.*

**magis**, adv., *more.*

**magister**, -rī, m., *master.*

**māgnus**, -a, -um, adj., 54,  
240, *large, great.*

**māior**, -ius, adj., 240, *larger,*  
*greater.*

**mālō**, mālle, māluī, *prefer.*

**malus**, -a, -um, adj., *bad.*

**manipulāris**, -e, adj., *of the*  
*same (i-stem) military com-*  
*pany, comrade.*

**māximus**, -a, -um, adj., 240,  
*largest, greatest.*

**mē**, meī. See *ego.*

**mēcum**. For *cum mē.*

**medius**, -a, -um, adj., *middle*  
*of.*

**melior**, -ius, adj., 240, *better.*

**memoria**, -ae, *memory.*

**mentiō**, -ōnis, f., *mention.*

**meus**, -a, -um, poss. adj.  
and pron., *my, mine.*

**mihi**. See *ego.*

**mīles**, -itis, m., 133, *soldier.*

**mīlle** (plural *mīlia*, -ium),  
num. adj., indeclinable in  
sing., *thousand.*

**minimus**, -a, -um, adj.,  
superlative of **parvus**,  
*smallest, least.*

**minor**, -us, adj. Compara-  
tive of **parvus**, *smaller,*  
*less.*

**mittō**, mittere, mīsī, mis-  
sus, 215, *send.*

**moneō**, monēre, monuī, mo-  
nitus, *advise.*

**mōns**, montis, m., 233,  
*mountain (i-stem).*

**moriōr**, morī, mortuus,  
dep., *die.*

**moveō**, movēre, mōvī, mō-  
tus, *move.*

**mulier**, -eris, f., *woman:*  
**mulierēs**, nom. and acc.  
plural, *women.*

**multitūdō**, -inis, f., *multi-*  
*tude.*

**multus**, -a, -um, adj., 540,  
240, 247, *much; plural*  
*many.*

The *genitives* of nouns are given, to indicate the *declension.*

Nouns of the *first* declension are *feminine*, unless otherwise stated.

Nouns of the *second* declension in *-us* are *masculine.*

Nouns of the *second* declension in *-um* are *neuter.*

The principal parts of *verbs* of the *first conjugation* marked "1." are like those of **amō**.

If the principal parts of a compound verb are not given (as **ab-dūcō**, **ab-eō**), it is because they are similar to those of the verb from which they are derived (as **dūcō**, **eō**).



mūrus, -ī, 91, *wall*.

nam, adv., *for*.

nātiō, -ōnis, f., *nation*.

nātūra, -ae, *nature* (of a thing); nātū (abl. of nātus), *by birth, in age*.

nauta, -ae, m., *sailor*.

nāvis, -is, f., 177, *ship* (i-stem); **navem solvit** (plural solvērunt), *set sail*; **nāvis longa**, *ship of war*; **nāvis onerāria**, *transport, merchant vessel*.

-ne, interrog. adv. Sign of a question (41).

nē, conj., *in order that . . . not*. With verbs of fearing, *lest*. (With subj.) With imperative, *not*.

nec, conj., *and not*; **nec . . . nec**, *neither . . . nor*.

nēmō (dat. nēmīnī), m. and f., *no one, nobody*.

ne-que, conj., *and not*; **neque . . . neque**, *neither . . . nor*.

neuter, -tra, -trum, adj., *neither (of two)*.

nēve, adv., *and not, nor*.

niger, -gra, -grum, adj., *black*.

nihil, n. (indeclinable), *nothing*.

ni-si, conj., *if not, unless, except*.

noceō, nocēre, nocuī [noci-tūrus], *injure*.

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī [nōn-volō], 381, *be unwilling*.

nōn, adv., *not*.

nōn-nūllus, -a, -um, adj., *some, several*.

nōn-numquam, adv., *sometimes*.

nōs, nostrūm (nōbīs). Plural of ego, *I*.

noster, -tra, -trum, poss. adj. and pron., 256, *our*.

novus, -a, -um, adj., 116, *new, strange*; **novissimum agmen**, *rear rank*.

nox, -noctis, f., 165, *night* (i-stem).

nūdus, -a, -um, adj., *bare*.

nūllus, -a, -um, adj. (nē-ullus), *none, no one*.

numerus, -ī, 47, *number*.

numquam, adv., *never*.

nunc, adv., *now*.

nūntiō, I., 80, *report, tell*.

nūntius, -ī, 65, *messenger*.

ob, prep. w. acc., *on account of*.

obses, -idis, m. and f., 165, *hostage*.

ob-tineō (-tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus), 233, *possess*.

occāsiō, -ōnis, f., *opportunity*.

occupō, I., 86, *seize, take possession of*.

of *ferō* (of-ferre, ob-tulī, ob-lātus), *bring forward, offer.*

*ōlim*, adv., *once, formerly.*

*omnis*, -e, adj., 171, *all, every* (i-stem).

*onerārius*, -a, -um, adv. (something) *that bears a burden.* See *nāvis*.

*opera*, -ae, f., *exertion, work.*

*opīniō*, -ōnis, f., *opinion, belief.*

*oppidum*, -ī, 54, *town.*

*op-pūgnō*, I., 86, *to attack.*

*optimus*, -a, -um, adj., superlative of *bonus*, 240, *best.*

*opus*, -eris, n., 302, *work.* Also, *need.*

*ōrātiō*, -ōnis, f., *speech.*

*paene*, adv., *almost.*

*pār*, *paris*, adj., *equal.*

*pars*, *partis*, f., 140, *part, etc., hence region, place, direction* (i-stem).

*parō*, I, 171, *prepare.*

*parvus*, -a, -um, adj., 215, *little, small.*

*passus*, -ūs, m., *a pace; mille*

*passuum*, *a Roman mile* (five thousand feet).

*pater*, -tris, m., *father.*

*paucī*, -ae, -a, adj., 71, *few.*

*paulātim*, adv., *little by little, by degrees.*

*paulim*, adv., } *a little.*  
*paulō*, adv., }

*pecūnia*, -ae, *money.*

*pedes*, -itis, m., 133, *foot-soldier.*

*pēior*, -ius, adj., comparative of *malus*, *worse.*

*pellō*, *pellere*, *pepulī* [cp. *dō*], *pulsus*, *drive out.*

*per*, prep. w. acc., *through, during, by means of.*

*per-dūcō*, *conduct to, draw out or lengthen.*

*per-exiguus*, -a, -um, *very small.*

*per-ferō*, *convey, endure, complete.*

*perīculum*, -ī, *danger.*

*per-mittō*, *permit, give* (something) *up to* (some one).

*per-suādeō* (-suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsus) (followed by *ut* or *nē*), 377, *persuade.*

The *genitives* of nouns are given, to indicate the *declension*.

Nouns of the *first declension* are *feminine*, unless otherwise stated.

Nouns of the *second declension* in -us are *masculine*.

Nouns of the *second declension* in -um are *neuter*.

The principal parts of *verbs* of the *first conjugation* marked "I." are like those of *amō*.

If the principal parts of a compound verb are not given (as *ab-dūcō*, *ab-eō*), it is because they are similar to those of the verb from which they are derived (as *dūcō*, *eō*).

per-terreō (-terrēre, -terrūi, -territus), *terrify*.

per-tineō (-tinēre, -tinuī, —), 233, *extend*.

per-turbō, I., 321, *disturb greatly, throw into confusion*.

per-veniō, *arrive*.

pēs, -pēdis, m., 140, *foot*.

pessimus, -a, -um, adj., superlative of *malus*, *worst*.

petivī (plural petivērunt), *sought*.

petō, petere, petivī, petitus, *seek, beg, demand*, (followed by *ut* or *nē*), 256.

pīlum, -ī, a *dart* or *javelin*.

polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus, dep., *to promise*.

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, *to place, put*, 294.

populus, -ī, 71, *people*.

porta, -ae, *gate*; portat, *carries*.

portō, I., 80, *carry*.

possessiō, -ōnis, f., *possession*.

possum, posse, potuī (potissum), 317, *be able, can*.

post, adv. and prep. w. acc., *behind, after, afterward*.

post-eā, adv., *afterward*.

posterus, -a, -um, adj., 240, *next*.

postquam, conj., *after*.

postulō, I., *demand*.

potestās, -ātis, f., *power*.

prae, adv. and prep. w. abl., *before*.

praeda, -ae, 317, *plunder, booty, loot*.

prae-dīcō, *say or tell beforehand, predict, advise, warn, command*.

prae-dūcō, *lead in front of, show*.

prae-ficiō (-ficere, -fēcī, -fectus), *set over, place in command*.

praemium, -ī, *reward*.

prae-mittō, *send before*.

prae-occupō, *seize before*.

prae-sum, *be over, rule*.

praeter, adv. and prep. w. acc., *except, contrary to*.

praeter-eā, adv., *besides*.

praeter-mittō, *omit, neglect*.

premō, premere, pressī, pressus, 289, *to press, harass*.

prīmus, -a, -um, adj., 240, *first*.

prīmō, adv., } *first, at first*  
prīmum, adv., }

prīnceps, -ipis, m., 133, a *leader, chief*.

prior, -ius, adj., 240, *former, previous*; prius, adv., *earlier, first*.

prō, prep. w. abl., *before, in front of*.

**procul**, adv., *far distant, from afar.*

**prō-cumbō** (-cumbere, -cubūī, -cubitus), *fall or lie down.*

**prō-cūrrō** (-currere, -cucurrī [cp. **dō**], -cursus), *run forward.*

**prō-dūcō**, *lead forth.*

**proelium**, -ī, n., 145, *battle.*

**proficīscor**, **proficīscī**, **profectus**, 372, *set out, go.*

**pro-hibeō** (-hibēre, -hibūī, -hibitus), 191, *to keep (some one) away (often with ex).*

**prō-iēcit**, *threw.*

**prope**, adv. and prep. w. acc., *near.*

**properat**, *hastens.*

**properō**, I., 165, *hasten, hurry.*

**propior**, -ius, adj., *nearer.*

**propter**, prep. w. acc., *because of.*

**prōvincia**, -ae, *province.*

**prō-vidēō**, *foresee, provide for.*

**proximus**, -a, -um, adj., *next, nearest (last).*

**pūblicus**, -a, -um, adj., *public.* (See **rēs**.)

**puella**, -ae, *girl.*

**puer**, -ī, m., *boy.*

**pūgna**, -ae, 86, *a fight.*

**pūgnat**,  *fights (3d person).*

**pūgnō**, I, 80, *to fight.*

**pulcher**, -chra, -chrum, adj., *beautiful.*

**pulvis**, -eris, m., *dust.*

**putō**, I., *suppose, think.*

**quaerō**, **quaerere**, **quaesivī**, **quaesītus**, *ask, inquire ; also seek (followed by ut).*

**quam**, adv., 226, *than.* With superlative *as ... as possible.*

**-que**, conj., 91, *and.*

**quī**, **quae**, **quod**, rel. pron., *who, which, what.*

**quid?** *what? why?*

**quīdam**, **quaedam**, **quid-**(**quod**)**dam**, indef. pron., *a certain (one), a.*

**quis**, **quae**, **quid (quod)**, interrog. pron. and adj., *who? which? what?*

The *genitives* of nouns are given, to indicate the *declension*.

Nouns of the *first declension* are *feminine*, unless otherwise stated.

Nouns of the *second declension* in *-us* are *masculine*.

Nouns of the *second declension* in *-um* are *neuter*.

The principal parts of *verbs* of the *first conjugation* marked "I." are like those of **amō**.

If the principal parts of a compound verb are not given (as **ab-dūcō**, **ab-eō**), it is because they are similar to those of the verb from which they are derived (as **dūcō**, **eō**).

quisquam, quaequam, quid-  
(quod) quam, indef. pron.,  
any, any one.

quisque, quaeque, quid-  
(quod) que, indef. pron.,  
each one, each, every.

quod, conj., 396, because.

quoniam, adv., 158, because.

quoque, conj., also.

ratio, -ōnis, f., plan, nature  
(of something), affair,  
opinion.

re-, in compounds as a prefix,  
again.

recēpit. See sē.

re-cipiō (cipere, -cēpī, -cep-  
tus), 321, take back, re-  
ceive.

rēctus, -a, -um, adj., straight,  
direct.

re-cuperō, I., recover.

re-d-eō, go back.

re-dūcō, lead back.

re-ficiō (-ficere, -fēcī, -fec-  
tus), refit, refresh.

rēgīna, -ae, queen.

regiō, -ōnis, f., 171, region.

re-linguō (-linguere, -līquī,  
-līctus), 317, leave behind.

reliquus, -a, -um, adj. (cp.  
relinquō), 165, remaining,  
the rest of.

re-periō (-perīre, -perī,  
-pertus), find out.

rēs, reī, f., 271, thing, state

of affairs; rēs frūmen-  
tāria, provisions; rēs  
pūblica, government (at  
Rome).

re-spondeō (-spondēre,  
-spondī, -spōnsus), to  
reply.

re-vocō, I., call back, recall.

rēx, rēgis, m., king.

rīvus, -ī, stream.

rosa, -ae, rose.

rūrsus, adv., again, back  
again.

sacrāmentum, -ī, the oath of  
allegiance to the general-in-  
chief taken by a Roman  
soldier when he enlisted.

saepe, adv., often.

saepius, adv., more or too  
frequently.

sagittārius, -ī, archer.

sāl, sālis, m., salt.

salūs, -ūtis, f., safety.

sānitās, -ātis, f., soundness  
(of mind or body).

satis, adv., enough.

scelus, -eris, n., crime.

sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus,  
know, perceive.

scūtum, -ī, shield.

sē (or sēsē), acc. of reflex-  
ive pron. of third pers.,  
himself, herself, itself,  
themselves (478); sē recē-  
pit (plural recēpērunt),

- retreated.* (Cp. English "to betake one's self.")
- sēcernō, sēcernere, sēcrēvī, sēcrētus,** *to separate.*
- sēcum,** for **cum sē.**
- secundus, -a, -um,** *adj., favorable, second.*
- sed,** *conj., 65, but.*
- semper,** *adv., always.*
- senātus, -ūs, m.,** *senate.*
- septimus, -a, -um,** *adj., 479.*
- sequor, sequī, secūtus,** *dep., 372, follow.*
- servātus est,** *was saved.*
- servō, I.,** *save.*
- sēsē.** See **sē.**
- sī, conj.,** *if.*
- sīc,** *adv., thus.*
- sīgnum, -ī, 104,** *standard or ensign, signal.*
- silva, -ae, 41,** *wood, forest.*
- sine,** *prep. w. abl., without.*
- sinister, -tra, -trum,** *adj., left (hand).*
- sōlus, -a, -um,** *adj., alone, single.*
- solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus,** *to loose. See nāvis.*
- soror, -ōris, f.,** *sister.*
- spatium, -ī,** *space.*
- spērō, I.,** *look for, hope.*
- spēs, speī, f.,** *hope.*
- sponte (abl.),** *always with meā, tuā, suā, etc., of (one's) free will, voluntarily.*
- statim,** *adv., immediately.*
- statiō, -ōnis, f.,** *a guard, sentry; in statiōne, on guard.*
- stō, stāre, stetī, status (cp. dō),** *to stand.*
- studium, -i, 86,** *study, zeal.*
- stultissimus, -a, -um,** *adj. (superlative of stultus), most stupid, idiotic.*
- stultus, -a, -um,** *adj., stupid.*
- sub, prep. w. acc. and abl.,** *under.*
- sūb-iciō (-icere, -iēcī, -iectus),** *place under, expose [sub-iaciō].*
- subitō,** *adv., 247, suddenly.*
- suf-ferō (suf-ferre, sus-tulī, sub-lātus),** *offer, sustain, endure [sub-ferō].*
- sum-moveō (-movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus),** *remove, drive back [sub-moveō].*

The *genitives* of nouns are given, to indicate the *declension*.

Nouns of the *first declension* are *feminine*, unless otherwise stated.

Nouns of the *second declension* in *-us* are *masculine*.

Nouns of the *second declension* in *-um* are *neuter*.

The principal parts of *verbs* of the *first conjugation* marked "I." are like those of **amō**.

If the principal parts of a compound verb are not given (as **ab-dūcō, ab-eō**), it is because they are similar to those of the verb from which they are derived (as **dūcō, eō**).

- sus-tineō** (-tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus), 372, *hold out against*.  
**sub-veniō**, *come to one's assistance*.  
**summa**, -ae, *amount, total*.  
**summus**, -a, -um, adj., 145, *highest, top of*.  
**sunt**, *are*.  
**superior**, -ius, adj., 240, *higher*.  
**superō**, I., 104, *surpass, conquer*.  
**super-sum**, *remain over, be left over, survive*.  
**suprā**, adv. and prep. w. acc., *above*.  
**suus**, -a, -um, poss. adj. and pron., 191, *his, her, hers, its, their, theirs*.  
**tabernāculum**, -ī, *tent*.  
**tam**, adv., *to such a degree, so*.  
**tamen**, adv., *nevertheless*.  
**tandem**, adv., *finally*.  
**tantus**, -a, -um, adj., *so great, so much*.  
**tantum**, adv., *only*.  
**tardō**, I., *retard*.  
**tēcum**, for *cum tē*.  
**tēlum**, -ī, 65, *weapon, especially a javelin*.  
**tempestās**, -ātis, f., *storm, weather*.  
**temptō**, I., 133, *try*.  
**tempus**, -oris, n., 191, *time*.  
**teneō**, tenēre, tenuī, tentus, 191, *hold, keep*.  
**terra**, -ae, 41, *land, country*.  
**tertius**, -a, -um, adj., *the third*.  
**timeō**, timēre, timuī, 335, *to fear*.  
**tīrō**, -ōnis, m., *recruit, inexperienced soldier* (sometimes used in contempt).  
**tōtus**, -a, -um, adj., *whole, all, entire*.  
**trā-dūcō**, *lead across*.  
**trāns**, prep. w. acc., *across*.  
**trāns-eō**, *go across*.  
**trāns-figō** (-figere, -fixī, -fixus), *pierce through*.  
**trāns-portō**, I., *carry across*.  
**tribūnus**, -ī, 71, *tribune*.  
**tū**, tuī (tibi, tē), pers. pron., *thou, you*.  
**tuba**, -ae, *trumpet*.  
**tum**, adv., *then* (of time).  
**tūtus**, -a, -um, adj., *safe*.  
**tuus**, -a, -um, poss. adj. and pron., *thy, thine, your, yours*.  
**ubi**, adv., *where*.  
**ullus**, -a, -um, adj., *any (one)*.  
**ulterior**, -ius, adj., *further*.  
**ultrā**, adv., *beyond, further*.  
**ultrō**, adv., *moreover, of one's own accord*.

umerus, -ī, *shoulder*.

ūnus, -a, -um, num. adj.,  
*one, alone*; ad ūnum, *to  
the last one* (479).

urbs, urbis, f., 184, *city*  
(i-stem).

ūsus, ūsus, m., *use, value*.

ut, conj., with subj., *in order  
that, so that*.

uter, utra, utrum, interrog.  
pron., *which* (of two)?

uterque, utraque, utrum-  
que, indef. pron., *each* (of  
two), *both*.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus, dep., 372,  
*to use, employ*.

utrum, adv., *whether*;  
utrum...an, *whether...or*.

uxor, -ōris, f., *wife*.

vāgīna, -ae, *scabbard*.

vallis, -is, f., *valley* (i-stem).

vāllum, -ī, *the rampart or  
wall of a camp*.

veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventus,  
355, *come*.

venit (plural veniunt),  
*comes*.

vēnit (plural vēnērunt),  
*came*.

vērō, adv., }  
vērum, adv., } *truly*.

vertō, vertere, vertī, versus,  
*turn, turn around or about*.

vērūm, -ī, neuter of adj.  
used as noun, *the truth*.

vester, -tra, -trum, poss. adj.  
and pron., *your, yours* (of  
more than one person).

veterānus, -a, -um, adj.,  
*veteran*.

via, viae, 41, *way, road,  
street*.

victor, -ōris, m., *victor*.

victōria, -ae, *victory*.

vidē, *see!*

videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus,  
*to see*.

vīdit (plural vīdērunt), *saw*.

vir, virī, m., 59, *man*; some-  
times, *hero*.

virtūs, virtūtis, f., 140,  
*manliness, bravery*.

vīta, vītae, *life*.

vītō, I., *avoid*.

vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctus,  
*live*.

The *genitives* of nouns are given, to indicate the *declension*.

Nouns of the *first* declension are *feminine*, unless otherwise stated.

Nouns of the *second* declension in *-us* are *masculine*.

Nouns of the *second* declension in *-um* are *neuter*.

The principal parts of *verbs* of the *first conjugation* marked "I." are like those of *amō*.

If the principal parts of a compound verb are not given (as *ab-ducō, ab-eō*), it is because they are similar to those of the verb from which they are derived (as *ducō, eō*).



vīvus, -a, -um, adj., <i>alive</i> .	vulnerat, <i>wounds</i> .
vix, adv., <i>scarcely</i> .	vulnerō, I., 80, <i>to wound</i> .
volō, velle, voluī, 381, <i>wish</i> , be willing.	vulnus, -eris, n., <i>wound</i> .

## ADDENDA.

- an, adv., *or*.
- aptus, -a, -um, adj., *suited, fit*.
- arx, arcis, *citadel* (i stem).
- circiter, adv. and prep. w. acc., *about, around*.
- con-loquor, dep., *converse, confer*.
- contrōversia, -ae, *dispute, argument*.
- duo, duae, duo, num. adj., *two* (297).
- fīnitimus, -a, -um, adj., *neighboring*.
- fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, dep. w. abl. (370), *enjoy*.
- fungor, fungī, fūctus sum, dep. w. abl. (370), *do, perform*.
- īgnorāns, -antis, *ignorant*.
- impediō, impedire, impedivī, impedītum, *entangle, hinder*.
- īnsula, -ae, *island*.
- miser, -era, -erum, adj., *wretched*.
- multō, multum, advs. 247, *much*.
- nātus est, *was born*.
- per-ficiō (-ficere, -fēcī, -fectum), *finish*.
- per-sequor, dep., *follow up, accomplish*.
- plūrimus, -a, -um; plūs, plūris, adjs. See 228 and 240.
- plūs, adv., *more*.
- potior, potirī, potītus sum, dep. w. abl. (370), *gain possession of*.
- praesidium, -ī, *defence, protection*.
- prīncipātus, -ūs, m., *headship*.
- quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, indef. rel. pron.,  
*whoever, whatever*.
- quis, quae, quid, 113, sometimes means *anyone, anything*.
- regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum, 482, *to rule*.
- sum, esse, fuī, 486, *to be*.



## PROPER NAMES.

---

Nouns of the *first* declension are *feminine*, unless otherwise stated.

Nouns of the *second* declension in *-us* are *masculine*.

Nouns of the *second* declension in *-um* are *neuter*.

Nouns of the *third* declension are *masculine*, unless otherwise stated.

**Aduatuca**, -ae, a camp established by Caesar among the Eburones.

**Aeduī**, -ōrum, a large tribe in Gaul which during the conquest of Gaul by Caesar was for the most of the time in alliance with the Romans.

**Aeginurus**, -ī, an island near the Roman province of Africa.

**Afrānius**, -ī, one of Pompey's lieutenants, who fought against Caesar in Spain.

**Africa**, -ae, a Roman province (modern Tunis and eastern Morocco).

**Africus**, -ī, the west-south-west wind.

**Alexandria**, -ae, the metropolis of Egypt.

**Alliēnus**, -ī.

**Allobrogēs**, -um, a Gallic tribe living in the valley of the Rhodanus or Rhone, and subject to the Roman power.

**Alpēs**, -ium, the Alps.

**Ambiānī**, -ōrum, a tribe in Gaul.

**Antonius**, -ī, a lieutenant of Caesar's; who later delivered the funeral oration over Caesar's body (see Shakespeare, "Julius Caesar"); rose as a triumvir to supreme power over the eastern half of the Roman dominion, and was finally defeated with Cleopatra by Octavius, the first Roman emperor, at Actium.

- Anquillaria**, -ae, a town in Epirus.
- Apollonia**, -ae, a town in Epirus.
- Apsus**, -ī, a river in Epirus.
- Aquītānus**, -a, -um, an inhabitant of Aquitania.
- Aquītānia**, -ae, the southwestern portion of Gaul.
- Arar**, **Araris**, a tributary of the river Rhodanus (Rhone).
- Ariovistus**, -ī, a German chief who invaded Gaul, but was defeated by Caesar.
- Aristius**, -ī.
- Arnus**, -ī, the river Arno, in Italy.
- Arvernī**, -ōrum, a Gallic tribe.
- Asia**, -ae, a Roman province in western Asia Minor.
- Atrebātēs**, -um, a tribe in Gaul.
- Aulus**, -ī,
- Auster**, -trī, the south wind.
- Baculus**, -ī.
- Bagradas**, -ae, a river in the Roman province of Africa.
- Belgae**, -ārum, the inhabitants of northeastern Gaul.
- Bellovacī**, -ōrum, a tribe of the Belgae.
- Bibracte**, -is, the capital of the Aedui.
- Bibulus**, -ī.
- Boīi**, -ōrum, a tribe which took part with the Helvetii in the invasion of central Gaul.
- Brittania**, -ae, Britain, at the time of Caesar covered with dense forests and inhabited by tribes of the same race as the Gauls.
- Caeroesī**, -ōrum, a tribe of Gaul.
- Caesar**, -aris. (1) Caius Julius Caesar. (2) Lucius Caesar, commander of a fleet stationed off the coast of Africa to oppose Curio's invasion of that province.
- Cāius**, -ī.
- Calēnus**, -ī, a lieutenant of Caesar.
- Candavia**, -ae, a district in eastern Epirus.
- Cannae**, -ārum, the scene of the great defeat of the Romans by Hannibal.
- Carnūtēs**, -um, a tribe in Gaul.
- Carthāgō**, -inis, Carthage, a

Nouns of the *first* declension are *feminine*, unless otherwise stated.

Nouns of the *second* declension in *-us* are *masculine*.

Nouns of the *second* declension in *-um* are *neuter*.

Nouns of the *third* declension are *masculine*, unless otherwise stated.

- great commercial city and bitter rival of Rome.*
- Casticus, -ī.**
- Castra Cornēlia, a place upon the coast near Utica, in the Roman province of Africa.**
- Centrōnēs, -um, a tribe in Gaul.**
- Christus, -ī, Christ.**
- Cicerō, ōnis, a lieutenant of Caesar, and brother of the famous orator.**
- Cilicia, -ae, a country in southern Asia Minor.**
- Claudius, -ī.**
- Cleopatra, -ae, a famous queen of Egypt.**
- Clupea, -ae, a town in the Roman province of Africa.**
- Cnaeus, -ī.**
- Cominius, -ī.**
- Commius, -ī.**
- Cōnsidius, ī.**
- Coponius, -ī.**
- Cornēlia, -ae.**
- Crassus, -ī.**
- Crastīnus, ī.**
- Crēta, -ae, the island of Crete.**
- Curiō, -ōnis, a lieutenant of Caesar, in command of an army which invaded the Roman province of Africa.**
- Dācī, -ōrum, the inhabitants of Dacia, east of the river Danube.**
- Divitiacus, -ī, a chief of the Aedui.**
- Domitius, -ī.**
- Dumnorix, -rīgis, a chief of the Aedui; the brother of Divitiacus.**
- Dyrrhachium, -ī, a town in Epirus.**
- Eburōnēs, -um, a tribe of the Belgae.**
- Ēpirus, -ī, a district bordering the Adriatic Sea, north of Greece.**
- Fabius, -ī.**
- Galba, -ae, m.**
- Gallia, -ae, the country of Gaul.**
- Gallī, -ōrum, the Gauls.**
- Garumna, -ae, a river in Gaul, now the Garonne.**
- Genāva, -ae, a town on the borders of Helvetia, now Geneva.**
- Germānia, -ae, Germany: at the time of Caesar covered with forests and inhabited by many semi-savage tribes.**
- Germānī, -ōrum, the inhabitants of Germany.**
- Graecia, -ae, the country of Greece.**
- Graecī, -ōrum, the Greeks.**

- Hadrumentum**, -ī, a town in Africa.
- Hamilcar**, -āris, a Carthaginian general: the father of Hannibal.
- Hannibal**, -alis, the invader of Italy, during Rome's second war with Carthage.
- Hasdrubal**, -ālis, the brother of Hannibal: commander in Spain during the second war of Carthage with Rome.
- Helyētia**, -ae, a district of Gaul; the modern Switzerland.
- Helvētīi**, -ōrum, the inhabitants of Helvetia.
- Hercynia silva**, a great forest along the upper Danube.
- Herminius**, -ī.
- Hispania**, -ae, Spain: a province of the Roman dominion.
- Hispanus**, -ī, Spaniard.
- Ilerda**, -ae, a town in Spain, now Lerida.
- Italia**, -ae, Italy.
- Iuba**, -ae, m., King of the tribes living north of the Sahara desert and south and west of the Roman province of Africa.
- Labiēnus**, -ī, one of Caesar's most trusted lieutenants in the conquest of Gaul; but during the civil war one of his bitterest enemies.
- Latīnī**, -ōrum, the inhabitants of Latium, the district to the south of Rome.
- Libō**, -ōnis.
- Licinius**, -ī.
- Lingonēs**, -um, a Gallic tribe.
- Lūcius**, -ī.
- Macedonia**, -ae, a Roman province.
- Manilius**, -ī.
- Mārcus**, -ī.
- Menapii**, -ōrum, a Gallic tribe.
- Morinī**, -ōrum, a Gallic tribe.
- Nymphaeum**, -ī, a place in Epirus.
- Oceanus**, -ī, the Atlantic Ocean.
- Oricum**, -ī, a town in Epirus.
- Padus**, -ī, the river Po, in north Italy.

Nouns of the *first* declension are *feminine*, unless otherwise stated.

Nouns of the *second* declension in *-us* are *masculine*.

Nouns of the *second* declension in *-um* are *neuter*.

Nouns of the *third* declension are *masculine*, unless otherwise stated.

- Palaeste**, -ēs, f., *a harbor of Epirus.*  
**Petrōnius**, -ī.  
**Petrosidius**, -ī.  
**Pharsalia**, -ae, *a place in Thesaly, where Caesar defeated Pompey.*  
**Pharsalicus**, -a, -um, adj., *of Pharsalia.*  
**Pīsō**, -ōnis.  
**Plancus**, -ī.  
**Pompēius**, -ī, *the famous general, a contemporary, and finally the opponent of Caesar.*  
**Prōvincia**, -ae, *the Province: referring to the Roman province in Southern Gaul, of which Caesar was governor at the beginning of his conquest of the Gauls.*  
**Ptolemaeus**, -ī. *Ptolemy, the title of the kings of Egypt.*  
**Publius**, -ī.  
**Pullō**, -ōnis.  
  
**Quintilius**, -ī.  
  
**Rebilus**, -ī.  
**Rēgulus**, -ī.  
**Rēmī**, -ōrum, *a tribe in Gaul.*  
**Rēmus**, -ī.  
**Rhēnus**, -ī, *the river Rhine.*  
**Rōma**, -ae, *the city Rome.*  
**Rōmānī**, -ōrum, *the Romans.*  
**Rūfus**, -ī.  
  
**Saburra**, -ae, -m, *a lieutenant of King Juba, an opponent of Curio*  
**Salōnae**, -ārum, *a town upon the Adriatic Sea.*  
**Scīpiō**, -ōnis, *a Roman general who fought with Hasdrubal in Spain, and finally defeated Hannibal at Zama.*  
**Sēquanī**, -ōrum, *a Gallic tribe.*  
**Sextius**, -ī.  
**Sextus**, -ī.  
**Sicilia**, -ae, *the island of Sicily.*  
**Staberius**, -ī.  
**Suēbī**, -ōrum, *a tribe of Germans.*  
**Sugambri**, -ōrum, *a tribe of Germans.*  
**Sulla**, -ae, m., *a famous Roman general, of the generation before Caesar.*  
**Syria**, -ae, *a Roman province.*  
**Syriacus**, -a, -um, adj. *Syrian.*  
  
**Thapsus**, -ī, *a town in the Roman province of Africa.*  
**Thessalia**, -ae, *Thessaly.*  
**Thracia**, -ae, *the country of Thrace.*  
**Thrāx**, **Thrācis**, *an inhabitant of Thrace.*  
**Tiber**, -is, *the river Tiber.*  
**Ticida**, -ae.  
**Ticīnus**, -ī.  
**Tigurīnī**, -ōrum, *a sub-tribe or canton of the Helvetii.*

**Titurius, -ī.**

**Titus, -ī.**

**Trēverī, -ōrum,** a tribe of the Belgae.

**Tulingī, -ōrum,** a tribe which joined with the Helvetii in the invasion of central Gaul.

**Tusculum, -ī,** a town in Latium.

**Usipitēs, -um,** a tribe of Germans.

**Utica, -ae,** a large city in the Roman province of Africa.

**Vārus, -ī,** a lieutenant of Pompey, opposed to Curio in the Roman province of Africa.

**Valerius, -ī.**

**Vēlocassī, -ōrum,** a tribe of Gaul.

**Volcae Tectosagēs,** a tribe of Gauls living in Germany.

**Vorēnus, -ī.**

**Zama, -ae,** a place near Carthage, where Hannibal was defeated by Scipio.

Nouns of the *first* declension are *feminine*, unless otherwise stated.

Nouns of the *second* declension in *-us* are *masculine*.

Nouns of the *second* declension in *-um* are *neuter*.

Nouns of the *third* declension are *masculine*, unless otherwise stated.



# RULES OF SYNTAX

ARRANGED SYSTEMATICALLY FOR READY REFERENCE.

A. denotes Allen and Greenough's Latin Grammar; B., Bennett's<sup>1</sup>; G., Gildersleeve's; H., Harkness'.<sup>2</sup>

28. Appositives agree in case with the nouns which they limit. A. 183, 184. B. 169. 2. G. 321. H. 393.

30. A predicate noun agrees with the subject in case. A. 183, 185. B. 168. G. 325. H. 393.

109. A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends upon the construction of the clause in which it stands. A. 198. B. 250. G. 614. H. 396.

## NOMINATIVE.

21. The nominative is the case of the subject. A. 173. B. 166. G. 203. H. 387.

## ACCUSATIVE.

22. The direct object of a verb is put in the accusative. A. 237. B. 173. G. 328. H. 404.

261. Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative. A. 256, 257. B. 181. G. 335, 336. H. 417.

340. The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative. A. 173. 2. B. 330, 331. G. 420. H. 414, 415.

<sup>1</sup> School edition.

<sup>2</sup> Revised edition.

360. With names of towns, the place to which is expressed by the accusativè without a preposition. A. 258. *b*. B. 182. G. 337. H. 418.

### DATIVE.

23. The indirect object of a verb is put in the dative. A. 255. B. 187. G. 345, 348. H. 424.

35. The dative is used with **sum** to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject. A. 231. B. 190. G. 349. H. 430.

375. Most verbs meaning to favor, please, believe, trust, help, and their opposites; also, to persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, and the like, are followed by the dative. A. 227. B. 187. II. *a*. G. 346. H. 426.

399. The end or purpose which an object serves may be denoted by the dative. A. 233. B. 191. G. 356. H. 433.

400. Many verbs compounded with **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, and super** are followed by the dative. A. 228. B. 187. III. G. 347. H. 429.

456. The agent with the gerundive is expressed by the dative. A. 232. B. 189. G. 355. H. 431.

### GENITIVE.

149. A person or thing may be described by the ablative or the genitive of a noun, if an adjective be used with the noun. A. 215. B. 203. G. 365. H. 440. 3.

### ABLATIVE.

69. The means or instrument of an action is expressed by the ablative. A. 248. c. I. B. 218. G. 401. H. 476.

78. The agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with **ā** or **ab**. A. 246. B. 216. C. 401. H. 467.

89. The manner of an action is expressed by the ablative with **cum**, unless an adjective is used with the ablative, when **cum** may be omitted. A. 248. B. 220. G. 399. H. 473. 3.

137. Cause may be expressed by the ablative. A. 245. B. 219. G. 408. H. 475.

149. A person or thing may be described by the ablative or the genitive of a noun, if an adjective be used with the noun. A. 251. B. 224. G. 400. H. 473. 2.

174. Time when, or within which, is expressed by the ablative. A. 256. B. 230, 231. G. 393. H. 486.

194. The ablative of specification is used to point out in what respect a statement is true. A. 253. B. 226. G. 397. H. 480.

222. The ablative is used with comparatives in the sense of "than" when **quam** is omitted. A. 247. B. 217. G. 398. H. 471.

370. **Utor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor**, and their compounds, govern the ablative. A. 249. B. 218. 1. G. 407. H. 477. I.

418. Separation is expressed by the ablative, often without a preposition. A. 243. B. 214. G. 390. H. 461, 464.

## THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES.

447. Commands are put in the imperative or subjunctive; appeals in the subjunctive. The negative is **nē**. A. 266, 269. B. 275, 281. G. 260, 263, 266-270. H. 559, 560.

438. An indirect question takes the subjunctive. A. 334. B. 300, 315. I. G. 467. H. 649. II. 650.

### SEQUENCE OF TENSES IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

411. A primary tense in the main clause is followed by the present or perfect subjunctive.

A secondary tense in the main clause is followed by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive. A. 285, 286. B. 267. G. 509-511. H. 543-545.

## THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

279. Purpose is expressed by **ut** and **nē** with the subjunctive. A. 317, 331. B. 282, 295, 296. G. 545-548. H. 568.

309. The result of an action is expressed by the subjunctive with **ut** and **ut nōn**. A. 319, 332. B. 284, 297. G. 551-553. H. 570, 571.

425. Relative clauses of purpose, result, cause, and characteristic take the subjunctive. A. 317. 2, 319. 2, 320. B. 282. 2, 284. 2, 283. G. 630, 631, 633. H. 590, 591. 1, 2, 592.

353. The subjunctive with **ut** or **nē** is used after verbs of fearing; **ut** meaning "that not," and **nē** "that" or "lest." A. 331 f. B. 296. 2. G. 550. H. 567.

384. (**Cum**, temporal.) **Cum**, meaning "when," is followed by the subjunctive if the tense is the imperfect or pluperfect, otherwise by the indicative. A. 325. B. 288, 289. G. 580, 585. H. 600.

427. (**Cum**, causal or concessive.) **Cum**, when it means "since" or "although," is used with the subjunctive. A. 326. B. 286. 2, 309. 3. G. 586, 587. H. 598.

449. In indirect discourse, the subjunctive of appeals and commands remains a subjunctive.

The imperative is, in indirect discourse, changed to the subjunctive. A. 339. B. 316, 654, 652. H. 642.

413. The subordinate clauses of an indirect statement have their verbs in the subjunctive, and conform to the rule for the sequence of tenses. A. 336. 2. B. 314, 318. G. 508, 509. H. 643, 644.

443. II. Less vivid future conditions take the present subjunctive in both condition and conclusion. A. 307. 2. B. 303. G. 596. H. 576.

443. III. Conditions contrary to fact take the imperfect subjunctive when referring to present time, and the pluper-

fect subjunctive when referring to past time. A. 308.  
B. 304. G. 597. H. 579.

### THE INFINITIVE.

340. The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.  
A. 173. 2. B. 330, 331. G. 420. H. 414, 415.

346. The tenses of the infinitive in indirect statements denote past, present, or future, relatively to the time denoted by the verb of saying. A. 336. A. B. 317. G. 530, 531.  
H. 617-620.

### INDIRECT STATEMENTS.

341. Statements after verbs and other expressions of saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving are called Indirect Statements. A. 335, 336. B. 313, 314. G. 648. H. 641, 649.

413. The main verb of an indirect statement is put in the infinitive with subject accusative, and depends upon the verb or expression of saying, thinking, or perceiving. A. 336. 2.  
B. 314. G. 650. H. 642.

346. The tenses of the infinitive in indirect statements denote past, present, or future, relatively to the time denoted by the verb of saying. A. 336. A. B. 317. G. 530, 531.  
H. 617-620.

413. The subordinate clauses of an indirect statement have their verbs in the subjunctive, and conform to the rule for the sequence of tenses. A. 336. B. B. 318. G. 508, 509.  
H. 643, 644.

### CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

443. I. Simple conditional sentences take the indicative in both condition and conclusion. A. 306, 307. I. B. 302.  
G. 595. H. 574.

443. II. Less vivid future conditions take the present sub-

junctive in both condition and conclusion. A. 307. 2. B. 303. G. 596. H. 576.

443. III. Conditions contrary to fact take the imperfect subjunctive when referring to present time, and the pluperfect subjunctive when referring to past time. A. 308. B. 304. G. 597. H. 579.

### THE GERUNDIVE.

455. The gerundive is used with the verb **sum** to form the passive (or second) periphrastic conjugation, denoting obligation or duty. A. 113. *d.* I. 129. B. 115, 337. 7. G. 251. H. 621.

456. The agent with the gerundive is expressed by the dative. A. 232. B. 189. G. 215. 2, 355. H. 431.

# INDEX.

References are to paragraphs.

- A.
- a**, stem-vowel, 19, *d*.  
**-a**, 142, *a*; 431, 2.  
**-ā**, 431, 2.  
**ā**, **ab.**, 78.  
**ab-sum**, 400, *b*.  
 Ablative, 431, 2; Absolute, 403.  
   of Agent, 77; 78.  
   of Cause, 137; 431, 2.  
   with Comparatives, 223.  
   with certain Deponents, 370.  
   Descriptive, 149.  
   with **in**, 31.  
   of Manner, 89.  
   of Means or Instrument, 68;  
     69; 77, *a*; 431, 2.  
   of Separation, 418.  
   of Specification, 194.  
   of Time, 174.  
 Accent, 8,  
 Accusative; Direct Object, 16, 22.  
   with **in**, 38.  
   of Place Whither, 360.  
   of Time and Space, 261.  
   Subject of Infinitive, 340.  
**ācer**, 160.  
 Active Periphrastic Conjugation,  
   453.  
 Active Voice defined, 73, *a*.  
 Action; completed, 359, *b*.  
   incompleted, 275.  
**ad** with Gerundive and Gerund,  
   39.  
 Adjectives; 82, *a*; 89; 149, *a*;  
   169; 431, 1, 2.  
   Agreement of, 3, *a*; 16, *e*.  
   Comparing of; regular, 219;  
     220; 230; irregular, 228;  
     235; 237.  
 Adjectives; Demonstrative, 94;  
   100; 120; 121.  
   of First and Second Declen-  
     sions, 50; 51.  
   Interrogative, 114.  
   Irregular, 125.  
   Predicate, 52.  
   Possessive, 285.  
   Reason for terminations, 50, *b*.  
   of Third Declension, 160; 167.  
 Adverbs; 230; comparing of, 249;  
   formation of, 242; 243.  
 Agent; Ablative of, 77; 78.  
   Dative of, 456.  
**ager**, 56.  
 Agreement; of adjectives, 13, *a*;  
   16, *c*; 50, *b*; of relative pro-  
   nouns, 109; of verbs, 63.  
**aliquis**, 124.  
**alius**, 125.  
 Allied Words; Use explained, 131.  
**altior**, 221.  
 Alphabet, 1.  
**amāns**, 358.  
**amō**, 73; 82.  
 Antecedent, 108.  
 Antepenult, 6, 3; 8, 3.  
*Appeal of Divitiacus*, 414.  
*Appeal of Gauls to Caesar*, 350.  
 Appeals, 447; in indirect dis-  
   course, 449.  
 Apposition, 27; 28.  
 Article wanting, 13, *b*.  
**-ās**, 431, 2.  
**audiō**, 323.  

B.

**-bā**, 188; 333.  
*Baculus Centuriō*, 315; 320.  
**bonus**, 50; 82, *a*.

## C.

- c; pronunciation of, 5.  
*Is Caesar an "Imperator"?* 463.  
*Caesar atque Classis Pompēi*, 170  
 (Introduction); 176; 183; 190;  
 196; 201.  
*Caesar et Afrānius*, 262 (Intro-  
 duction); 263; 270; 288; 293;  
 301; 306.  
*Caesar et Ariovistus*, 102, II.  
 Cardinal numerals, 296; 298.  
**capiō**, 258.  
**caput**, 130.  
 Cases; names of, 9.  
 Cause; Ablative of, 137; 431, 2;  
 Relative Clauses of, 423.  
**centum**, 298.  
**ch**; pronunciation of, 5.  
 Characteristic; Relative clauses  
 of, 424.  
 Clause; defined, 161, 1; main,  
 161, 2; subordinate, 161, 4;  
 274; 412; 450.  
**collis**, 147.  
 Commands; 447; in indirect dis-  
 course, 449; 450.  
 Common constructions, 431, 2.  
 Comparatives; how declined, 221;  
 meanings, 219; 223  
 Comparing; of Adjectives; regu-  
 lar, 219, 220; 230; irregu-  
 lar, 228; 235-237.  
 of Adverbs; 249.  
 Complementary Infinitive, 155;  
 position, 155, *b*.  
 Completed action, 410, *a*.  
 Compounds; defined, 6, *a*; gov-  
 erning Dative, 400.  
 Conditional Sentences, 443.  
 Conjugations; analysis of forms,  
 332.  
 Conjugation; First, 73; 82.  
 Second, 179; 186.  
 Third, 205; 210; in *iō*, 258.  
 Fourth, 323.  
 Periphrastic Active, 453;  
 Passive, 455.  
 Consonants; classification, 2;  
 double, 2, 3; pronunciation of,  
 5.

- Contraction, 7, 4.  
 Contrary to fact conditions, 443,  
 III.  
**cornū**; 199.  
**cum**; causal and concessive, 427.  
*since, although*, 427.  
*when*, 384.  
*Curiō in Africā*, 361 (Intro-  
 duction); 362; 365; 395; 432; 435-  
**cursor**, 199.

## D.

- Dative; with Adjectives, 20, *c*.  
 of Agent, 456.  
 with Compounds, 400.  
 of End or Service, 399.  
 of Indirect Object, 20; 23.  
 with some Intransitives, 374.  
 of the Possessor, 34; 35.  
 Declension; defined, 19.  
 Adjectives; First and Second  
 Declensions, 50; 51.  
 Third Declension, 160; 167.  
 Nouns:  
 First Declension; 19; by  
 endings, 19, *c*.  
 Second; 45; 56; by endings,  
 45, *c*.  
 Third; stem, 130; mute  
 stems, 130; 135; liquid  
 stems, 142; i-stems, 147;  
 153.  
 Fourth, 199.  
 Fifth, 266.  
 Demonstrative Adjectives, 94; 100.  
 Demonstrative Pronouns, 94; 120;  
 121.  
 Dentals, 2.  
 Deponent Verbs; 367; 368; gov-  
 erning Ablative, 370.  
 Descriptive Ablative or Genitive,  
 149.  
**diēs**, 268.  
 Diphthongs, 4, 2; 7, 3, 4.  
 Direct Object, 16; 22; 431, 2.  
 Direct Questions, 437.  
 Discourse, Indirect; three forms of,  
 450.  
 Doer; expressed with Gerundive  
 by Dative, 456.



Double Consonants, 2; 3.

**duo**, 297.

Duration of Time, 261.

Duty; how expressed, 455.

**dux**, 130.

*Dying for his Men*, 461.

*Dying Standard Bearer*, 460.

### E.

**-e**; Vocative ending of Second Declension, 45, *a*.

**ego**, 283; 284.

Emphatic words; position of, 162.

End or Service; Dative of, 399.

Ending, 10, 2; 16, *a*; 39, *a*, *b*.

Endings; exhibited, 90; 190; 196; of first declension, 19, *e*; personal, 76; 334; of second declension, 45, *e*; of verbs, 63.

English Method of Pronunciation, 3.

**exsul**, 142.

Extent of Space, 261.

### F.

**facilis**, 167.

**faciō**, passive of, 430.

**facultās**, 130.

*Faithful until Death*, 465.

Fearing; Subjunctive after Verbs of, 352.

**ferō**, 430.

Fifth Declension, 266.

*Fight Around a Hillock*, 214.

**fiō**, 430.

First Conjugation, 73; 82; 332.

First Periphrastic Conjugation, 453.

Fourth Conjugation; 323; 332; imperfect Indicative, 335.

Fourth Declension, 199.

Future conditions, 443, I, II.

Future participle, 453.

Future tense, 408; tense sign, 333.

Future-perfect tense, 408.

### G.

**g**; pronunciation of, 5.

*Galli et Germāni*, 327.

Gender; 10; general rules, 3-5.

Genitive; 169; 130, *a*; 431, I.

Descriptive, 149.

of *i*-stems in Third Declension, 147.

of nouns in **-ius** and **-ium**, 57.

Partitive, 299, *b*.

**gn**; 7, 5.

Gerund; 389; 391; of purpose, 392.

Gerundive; 390; 391; in passive periphrastic conjugation, 455; of purpose, 392.

Grouping words, 169; 431, I.

**gu**, 4, I, *a*.

### H.

**h**, 7, 2.

*Hannibal et Scipiō*, 144, II; 151.

**hic**, 93; 94; 283, *b*.

Hints for reading Latin, 48; 169; 431.

Hints for writing Latin, 84; 169.

**homō**, 142.

**hostis**, 147.

**huīc**, 4, I, *a*.

Hyphens; used to group words, 169, *a*; 170; 176; 183; 190; 246; 251; 255.

### I.

**i**, I.

**-ibus**, 431, 2.

*i*-consonant, I; 5; 7; 5.

*i*-stems of third declension, 147; 153; 154; 167, *b*; 242.

**idem**, 120; 121, *a*.

Imperfect Tense; Indicative; 408; of fourth conjugation, 335; tense sign, 188; 333.

Subjunctive; in contrary to fact conditions, 443, III; with **cum** when, 384; meaning, 274; 276; tense sign, 333; when used, 277; 409; 411.

**ille**, 93; 94; 283, *b*.

Imperative in commands, 447; 449.

Impersonal construction; defined, 457; with passive periphrastic conjugation, 457.

**in**; with ablative, 31; with accusative, 38.

*Incident at the Battle of Pharsalia*, 466.

Incompleted action, 275.

Indeclinable nouns, 10, 5.

Indefinite pronouns, 124.

Indicative mood; with **cum** *when*, 384.

Future tense signs, 333.

Imperfect tense; of fourth conjugation; 335; tense sign, 333.

Indirect Discourse; three forms of, 450.

Indirect Object, 20; 23.

Indirect Statements; 337, II-341; 344-346; 450.

Defined, 337, II, *a*; 338.

Full rule for, 413.

Tenses of Infinitive, 344-346.

Subordinate Clauses of, 412.

Indirect Questions, 437; 438.

Infinitive Mood; 75, *a*; 83; 169; 279, *a*; 431, I; 446, *d*.

Complementary; 155; position, 155, *b*.

Future tense of deponents, 368, I.

Subject Accusative, 340.

Tenses of; in indirect statements, 344-346.

Use, 336-341; 344-346; 413.

Interrogative; adjectives, 114; pronouns, 113; 114.

Instrument or means; Ablative of, 68; 69.

Intransitive verbs; with dative, 375; 400; defined, 374; 400, *a*.

-**iō**; Verbs in, 258.

**ipse**, 120; 121, *c*.

Irregular adjectives, 125.

**is**, 100-102; 283, *b*.

-**is**, 431, 2.

**iste**, 120; 121, *a*, *b*.

## L.

Labials, 2, I.

*Labienus meets his match*, 464.

**labor**, 142.

Less vivid future conditions, 443, II.

**levis**, 167.

*Licinius atque Claudius*, 132.

Liquids, 2, 2.

Liquid stems of third declension, 142.

List of Rules for ready reference, following the Vocabularies, 285.

Lists of Words for Review, 129; 203; 291; 433.

**litus**, 142.

Locative case, 9, *a*.

## M.

-**m**, 431, 2.

Main clause, 161, 2, *b*.

Main verb; 161, 3; 275; 277; in indirect statements, 413.

**mālō**, 379.

Manner; Ablative of, 89.

**mare**, 147.

Means; Ablative of, 68; 69; 77, *a*; 431, 2.

Mental action; Verbs denoting, 338.

**miles**, 135.

*Miles et Tribūnus*, 144.

**mille**, 297, 298.

**moneō**, 179; 186.

**mōns**, 153.

**mūrus**, 45.

Mutes, 2, I; 7, 6.

Mute stems of third declension, 130; 135.

## N.

**nd**, 7, 2.

**nē**; in Negative Commands and Appeals, 447.

denoting Negative Purpose, 278, *b*; 279.

after Verbs of Fearing, 353.

-**ne**, 8, 4; 4'.

Negative Commands and Appeals, 447.

Negative Purpose, 278, *b*; 279.

Negative Result. 308, *b*, 309.

**nf**, 7, 5.

Neuter nominative and accusative, 130, *c*; 142, *a*.

Neuter nouns of second declension.

44.

**nōlō**, 379; 446, *d*.

Nominative, 21; 431, 2.

**nōs**, 283.

Nouns; indeclinable, 10, 5; predicate, 29; 30.

**nox**, 153.

Numerals, 296-299; 304.

### O.

Obligation; how expressed, 455.

Object; direct, 16; 22; 431, 2; indirect, 20; 23.

Omission of subject, 39.

**oppidum**, 45.

**opus**, 142.

Order of words, 26; 162.

-**ōs**, 431, 2.

### P.

Palatals, 2.

Participles; 82, *a*; 357.

How declined, 358.

of Deponents, 368, 2.

Future active, 453.

Perfect passive, 359, *b*.

Present active, 359, *a*.

How used, 359.

Partitive Genitive, 299, *b*.

Parts; Principal, of verbs, 83; 212; 330.

Passive Periphrastic Conjugation, 455.

Passive Voice defined, 73, *b*.

**pater**, 142.

Penult, 6, 3; 8, 3.

Perfect Tense; Indicative, 408.

Participle, 359, *b*; 403, *g*.

Subjunctive; meaning, 410; use, 411.

Personal endings, 76; 334.

Personal pronouns, 283.

**pēs**, 135.

**ph**; how pronounced, 5.

*Pisō Aquilānus*, 208.

Place whither, 360.

Pluperfect Tense; Indicative, 408.

Subjunctive; with **cum**, *when*,

384; meaning, 410; use, 411.

Plural; of adjectives, 13, *a*; of first declension, 12; of verbs, 16, *b*.

**plūs**, 229.

Possessive Adjectives, 285.

Possessor; Dative of the, 34; 35.

**possum**, 313; 400, *b*.

**prae-ficiō**, 400, *c*.

**prae-mittō**, 400, *d*.

Predicate; adjectives, 52; nouns, 29; 30.

Preposition; position of, 169; 431, I.

Present Tense; Indicative, 408.

Participle, 359, *a*.

Subjunctive; meaning, 274, 2;

276; tense sign, 333; when

used, 277; 409; 411; in

less vivid future conditions,

443, II.

Primary tenses, 408.

**princeps**, 130.

Principal Clause, 161.

Principal Parts of Verbs, 83; 212; 330.

*Proelium cum Helvētiis*, 157; 164.

*Proelium Mundae*, 326.

Pronouns; 100.

Demonstrative, 94; 120; 121.

Indefinite, 124.

Interrogative, 113; 114.

Personal and reflexive, 283.

Relative; 106; 107; agreement of, 108; 109.

Pronunciation; English, 3; Roman, 3; 4; 5.

**puer**, 56.

*Puer et Amicus*, 118.

*Pugna Pharsalica*, 245 (Introduction); 246; 251; 255; 467.

*Pullō et Vorēnus*, 217.

Purpose; defined, 278, *a*; gerundive or gerund with **ad**, 392; relative clauses of, 422; subjunctive of, 279; 337, *b*.

### Q.

**qu**, 4, I, *a*.

**quam**, than; 222; with superlatives, 439.

-**que**, 8, 4; 91.

Questions; direct, 437; indirect, 437; 438; 450.  
*quī*, 106-109; 286; 422.  
*quidam*, 124.  
*quis*, 113; 114.  
*quod*, 114, *b*.  
 -*quod*, 124, *b*.

## R.

-*re*, 333.  
 Reading; Hints for, 84; 169; 431.  
 Ready reference; Rules arranged for, Following the Vocabularies.  
*regō*, 205; 210.  
 Reflexive Pronouns, 283.  
 Relative clauses; 425; of cause, 423. of characteristic, 424. of purpose and result, 422.  
 Relative Pronouns; 106; 107; 161, 4; agreement of, 108; 109.  
 Result; Subjunctive of, 309; relative clause of, 422.  
 Review; Word-lists for, 129; 203; 291; 433.  
*Romānī atque Gallī*, 90.  
 Rules of Syntax arranged for ready reference, Following the Vocabularies.

## S.

*sapiēns*, 167.  
*Saving the Standard*, 225.  
 Second declension, 45; 56.  
 Second conjugation, 179; 186; 332.  
 Second periphrastic conjugation, 455.  
 Secondary tenses, 408.  
 Sequence of tenses, 411.  
 Separation; Ablative of, 418.  
 Service or end; Dative of, 399.  
*Silva*, 19.  
 Simple conditions; nothing implied, 443. I.  
 Space; extent of, 261.  
 Specification; Ablative of, 194.  
 Statements; direct, 337, II. indirect, 337, II-341; 344-346; 413; 450.  
 Stem; defined, 19, *d*, *e*; of third declension, 130.  
 Stems of verbs, 83; 330.

Stem vowel; of first declension, 19, *d*; of second declension, 43.  
 Subject; 21; 26, *a*; 35; omitted, 39.  
 Syntax; Rules of, arranged for ready reference, Following the Vocabularies.  
 Subjunctive Mood; 274.  
   in Conditional Sentences, 443, II, III.  
   in Commands and Appeals, 447; 449.  
   with *cum* Causal or Concessive, 427.  
   with *cum* Temporal, 384.  
   in Indirect Discourse, 450;  
     Indirect commands, 449;  
     Indirect Questions, 438;  
     Indirect statements, 413.  
   of Purpose, 279.  
   in Relative Clauses; 425; of cause, 423; of characteristic, 424; of purpose and result, 422.  
   of Result, 309.  
   after Verbs of Fearing, 353.  
   rule for Use of Tenses, 277; 409; 411.  
   Tenses of; present tense; meaning, 274, 2; 276; tense sign, 333; use, 277, 443, II.  
   imperfect tense; meaning; 274; 276; tense sign, 333; use, 277; 443, III.  
   perfect and pluperfect tenses; meaning, 410, *c*; use, 411.  
 Subordinate clauses; defined, 161;  
   in indirect statements, 413; 450.  
 Superlatives; how declined, 221, *b*.  
   meanings, 219; 223; with *quam*, 439.  
*sui*, 283.  
*sum*; 61; 67; 453; 454; position, 26, *b*.  
*suus*, 191.

## T.

Tenses; primary and secondary, 408; sequence of, 411.

Tense signs, 188; 333.  
**-ter**, 247.  
 "that" omitted in indirect statements, 337, II, *c*.  
 Third conjugation; 205; 210; 332; in **iō**, 258; 332.  
 Third declension; mute stems, 130; 135.  
   Liquid stems, 142.  
   *i*-stems, 147; 153.  
   Adjectives, 160; 167.  
 Three forms of indirect discourse, 450.  
 Time denoted by infinitive in indirect statements, 344; 345.  
 Time; ablative of, 174; accusative of, 261.  
 Towns; names of as place whither, 360.  
**trēs**, 297.  
**tū**, -83; 284.

## U.

**ultima**, 6, 3.  
 Uniting or grouping words, 169; 431, I.  
**-um**, 44.  
**ūnus**, 297.  
**urbs**, 153.  
**ut**; of purpose, 278, *b*; 279; of

result, 308, *b*; 309; with verbs of fearing, 353.  
**ūtor**, 370.

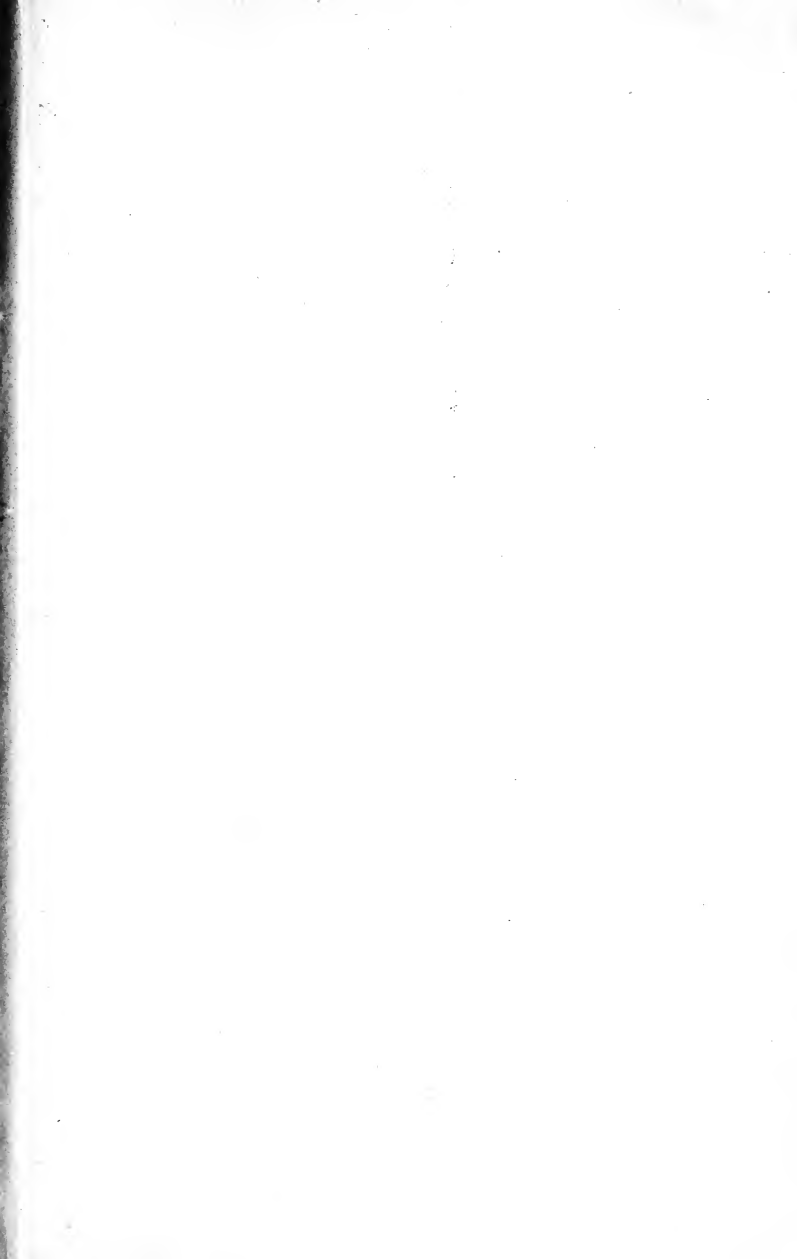
## V.

**v**; pronunciation, 5.  
**vēlōx**, 167.  
 Verb; main, 161, 3; position of, 26, *b*; 162; stems, 75, *a*; 83; 330.  
 Verbs; agreement of, 63; of mental action, 338; personal endings, 76; 334; plural of, 16, *b*; voice, 73, *a*, *b*.  
**vir**, 56.  
**virtūs**, 135.  
 Vivid, see Less vivid.  
 Vocative case, 45, *a*, *b*.  
 Voice; defined, 73, *a*, *b*.  
**volō**, 379.  
**vōs**, 283.  
 Vowels, 4, I; 7.

## W.

Words; Lists of Allied Words explained, 131.  
 Word-lists for review, 129; 203; 291; 433.  
 Word-order, 26; 162; 431, I.  
 Writing Latin; Hints for, 48.

4









THIS BOOK IS DUE ON THE LAST DATE  
STAMPED BELOW

AN INITIAL FINE OF 25 CENTS  
WILL BE ASSESSED FOR FAILURE TO RETURN  
THIS BOOK ON THE DATE DUE. THE PENALTY  
WILL INCREASE TO 50 CENTS ON THE FOURTH  
DAY AND TO \$1.00 ON THE SEVENTH DAY  
OVERDUE.

JUL 16 1949

JUL 26 1943

NOV 8 1947

11 Feb '55 Ss

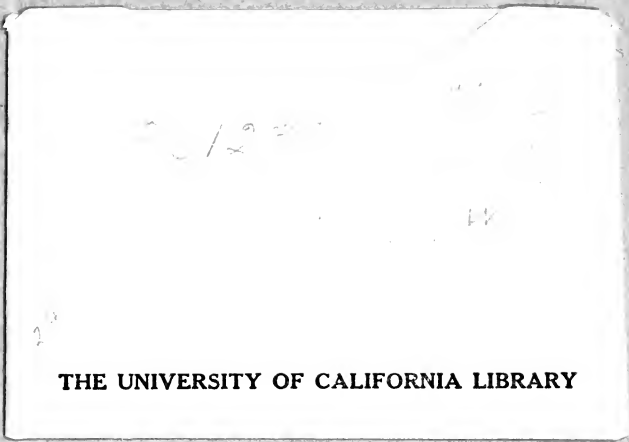
MAY 4 1953 LU

'5 Sep '57 KL

REC'D LD

DEC 21 1957

YB 00201



THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

